
SoftLayer API Python Client Documentation

Release latest

SoftLayer Technologies, Inc.

Sep 23, 2022

CONTENTS

1	Installation	3
1.1	What's Included	3
1.2	Using Pip	3
1.3	Debian/Ubuntu	3
1.4	From Source	3
2	Configuration File	5
3	API Documentation	7
3.1	Getting Started	7
3.2	Managers	8
3.2.1	SoftLayer.account	8
3.2.2	SoftLayer.autoscale	11
3.2.3	SoftLayer.block	13
3.2.4	SoftLayer.cdn	21
3.2.5	SoftLayer.dedicatedhost	24
3.2.6	SoftLayer.dns	27
3.2.7	SoftLayer.email	30
3.2.8	SoftLayer.event_log	31
3.2.9	SoftLayer.file	32
3.2.10	SoftLayer.firewall	39
3.2.11	SoftLayer.hardware	42
3.2.12	SoftLayer.image	49
3.2.13	SoftLayer.ipsec	51
3.2.14	SoftLayer.load_balancer	56
3.2.15	SoftLayer.metadata	59
3.2.16	SoftLayer.network	60
3.2.17	SoftLayer.ordering	67
3.2.18	SoftLayer.sshkey	73
3.2.19	SoftLayer.ssl	75
3.2.20	SoftLayer.ticket	76
3.2.21	SoftLayer.vs	78
3.2.22	SoftLayer.vs_capacity	89
3.2.23	SoftLayer.vs_placement	90
3.3	Making API Calls	91
3.4	Debugging	93
3.5	Dealing with KeyError Exceptions	93
3.5.1	The Solution	94
3.6	API Reference	94
3.6.1	SoftLayer Python API Client	94

3.6.2	SoftLayer.API	94
3.6.3	SoftLayer.exceptions	98
3.6.4	SoftLayer.decoration	99
3.6.5	SoftLayer.utils	100
4	Command-line Interface	105
4.1	Configuration Setup	105
4.2	Usage Examples	106
5	Debugging	109
6	Command Directory	111
6.1	Account Commands	111
6.1.1	account summary	111
6.1.2	account events	111
6.1.3	account event-detail	111
6.1.4	account invoices	112
6.1.5	account invoice-detail	112
6.1.6	account billing-items	113
6.1.7	account item-detail	113
6.1.8	account cancel-item	113
6.1.9	account orders	114
6.1.10	account licenses	114
6.1.11	account bandwidth-pools	114
6.1.12	account bandwidth-pools-detail	114
6.2	Autoscale Commands	114
6.2.1	autoscale list	115
6.2.2	autoscale detail	115
6.2.3	autoscale delete	115
6.3	Block Commands	115
6.3.1	block access-authorize	115
6.3.2	block access-list	116
6.3.3	block access-revoke	116
6.3.4	block access-password	117
6.3.5	block replica-failback	117
6.3.6	block replica-failover	118
6.3.7	block replica-order	118
6.3.8	block replica-partners	119
6.3.9	block replica-locations	119
6.3.10	block snapshot-cancel	120
6.3.11	block snapshot-create	120
6.3.12	block snapshot-delete	120
6.3.13	block snapshot-disable	121
6.3.14	block snapshot-enable	121
6.3.15	block snapshot-schedule-list	122
6.3.16	block snapshot-list	122
6.3.17	block snapshot-order	122
6.3.18	block snapshot-restore	123
6.3.19	block volume-cancel	123
6.3.20	block volume-count	124
6.3.21	block volume-options	124
6.3.22	block volume-detail	125
6.3.23	block volume-duplicate	125
6.3.24	block volume-list	126

6.3.25	block volume-modify	126
6.3.26	block volume-order	127
6.3.27	block volume-set-lun-id	128
6.3.28	block volume-limits	129
6.3.29	block volume-refresh	129
6.3.30	block volume-convert	129
6.3.31	block subnets-list	129
6.3.32	block subnets-assign	130
6.3.33	block subnets-remove	130
6.3.34	block volume-refresh	131
6.3.35	block volume-convert	131
6.3.36	block volume-set-note	131
6.3.37	block disaster-recovery-failover	132
6.3.38	block snapshot-set-notification	132
6.3.39	block snapshot-get-notification-status	132
6.3.40	block object-list	133
6.3.41	block object-storage-detail	133
6.3.42	block duplicate-convert-status	133
6.3.43	block object-storage-permission	133
6.4	Interacting with CDN	134
6.4.1	cdn detail	134
6.4.2	cdn list	134
6.4.3	cdn origin-add	134
6.4.4	cdn origin-list	136
6.4.5	cdn origin-remove	136
6.4.6	cdn purge	136
6.4.7	cdn edit	137
6.5	Call API	138
6.5.1	call-api	138
6.6	Shell	139
6.7	MetaData	139
6.7.1	metadata	139
6.8	Config	140
6.8.1	config setup	140
6.8.2	config show	141
6.8.3	setup	141
6.9	Dedicated Host Commands	141
6.9.1	dedicatedhost list	141
6.9.2	dedicatedhost create	142
6.9.3	dedicatedhost create-options	143
6.9.4	dedicatedhost detail	143
6.9.5	dedicatedhost cancel	144
6.9.6	dedicatedhost cancel-guests	144
6.9.7	dedicatedhost list-guests	144
6.10	DNS Management	145
6.10.1	dns import	145
6.10.2	dns record-add	145
6.10.3	dns record-edit	147
6.10.4	dns record-list	147
6.10.5	dns record-remove	148
6.10.6	dns zone-create	148
6.10.7	dns zone-delete	149
6.10.8	dns zone-list	149
6.10.9	dns zone-print	149

6.11	Email Commands	149
6.11.1	email list	149
6.11.2	email detail	149
6.11.3	email edit	150
6.12	Event-Log Commands	150
6.12.1	event-log get	150
6.12.2	event-log types	151
6.13	File Commands	152
6.13.1	file access-authorize	152
6.13.2	file access-list	152
6.13.3	file access-revoke	153
6.13.4	file replica-failback	153
6.13.5	file replica-failover	154
6.13.6	file replica-order	154
6.13.7	file replica-partners	155
6.13.8	file replica-locations	155
6.13.9	file snapshot-cancel	155
6.13.10	file snapshot-create	156
6.13.11	file snapshot-delete	156
6.13.12	file snapshot-disable	157
6.13.13	file snapshot-enable	157
6.13.14	file snapshot-list	158
6.13.15	file snapshot-order	158
6.13.16	file snapshot-restore	159
6.13.17	file volume-cancel	159
6.13.18	file volume-count	159
6.13.19	file volume-detail	160
6.13.20	file volume-duplicate	160
6.13.21	file volume-list	161
6.13.22	file volume-modify	162
6.13.23	file volume-order	162
6.13.24	file volume-limits	163
6.13.25	file volume-refresh	163
6.13.26	file volume-convert	164
6.13.27	file snapshot-schedule-list	164
6.13.28	file volume-refresh	164
6.13.29	file volume-convert	165
6.13.30	file volume-set-note	165
6.13.31	file volume-options	165
6.13.32	file disaster-recovery-failover	166
6.13.33	file snapshot-set-notification	166
6.13.34	file snapshot-get-notification-status	167
6.13.35	file duplicate-convert-status	167
6.14	Firewall Management	167
6.14.1	firewall add	167
6.14.2	firewall cancel	168
6.14.3	firewall detail	168
6.14.4	firewall edit	168
6.14.5	firewall list	169
6.14.6	firewall monitoring	169
6.15	Global IP Addresses	169
6.15.1	globalip assign	169
6.15.2	globalip cancel	170
6.15.3	globalip create	170

6.15.4	globalip list	170
6.15.5	globalip unassign	171
6.16	Interacting with Hardware	171
6.16.1	hardware bandwidth	171
6.16.2	hardware cancel-reasons	172
6.16.3	hardware cancel	172
6.16.4	hardware create-options	172
6.16.5	hardware create	173
6.16.6	hardware monitoring	174
6.16.7	hardware credentials	174
6.16.8	hardware detail	175
6.16.9	hardware billing	175
6.16.10	hardware edit	175
6.16.11	hardware list	176
6.16.12	hardware power-cycle	177
6.16.13	hardware power-off	178
6.16.14	hardware power-on	178
6.16.15	hardware reboot	178
6.16.16	hardware reload	179
6.16.17	hardware rescue	179
6.16.18	hardware reflash-firmware	180
6.16.19	hardware update-firmware	180
6.16.20	hardware toggle-ipmi	180
6.16.21	hardware ready	181
6.16.22	hardware dns-sync	181
6.16.23	hardware storage	182
6.16.24	hardware authorize-storage	182
6.16.25	hardware upgrade	182
6.16.26	hardware sensor	183
6.17	Disk Image Commands	184
6.17.1	image delete	184
6.17.2	image detail	184
6.17.3	image edit	184
6.17.4	image list	185
6.17.5	image import	185
6.17.6	image export	186
6.17.7	image datacenter	186
6.18	Interacting with IPSEC Tunnels	187
6.18.1	ipsec list	187
6.18.2	ipsec detail	188
6.18.3	ipsec update	190
6.18.4	ipsec configure	192
6.18.5	ipsec subnet-add	192
6.18.6	ipsec subnet-remove	193
6.18.7	ipsec translation-add	194
6.18.8	ipsec translation-remove	195
6.18.9	ipsec translation-update	196
6.19	licenses Commands	197
6.19.1	licenses create-options	197
6.19.2	licenses create	197
6.19.3	licenses cancel	198
6.20	LoadBalancers	198
6.20.1	LBaaS Commands	198
6.20.2	NetScaler Commands	206

6.21	NAS Commands	206
6.21.1	nas list	206
6.21.2	nas credentials	207
6.22	Object Storage Commands	207
6.22.1	object-storage accounts	207
6.22.2	object-storage endpoints	207
6.22.3	object-storage credential list	207
6.22.4	object-storage credential limit	208
6.22.5	object-storage credential delete	208
6.22.6	object-storage credential create	208
6.23	Ordering	209
6.23.1	order package-list	209
6.23.2	order package-locations	210
6.23.3	order category-list	210
6.23.4	order item-list	211
6.23.5	order preset-list	212
6.23.6	order place	212
6.23.7	order place <preset>	214
6.23.8	order place <Virtual Server>	214
6.24	Quotes	214
6.24.1	order quote	214
6.24.2	order quote-list	215
6.24.3	order quote-detail	216
6.24.4	order quote-save	216
6.24.5	order place-quote	216
6.25	Lookup	217
6.25.1	order lookup	217
6.26	Reports	218
6.26.1	summary	218
6.26.2	report bandwidth	218
6.26.3	report datacenter-closures	219
6.27	Security Groups	219
6.27.1	securitygroup list	219
6.27.2	securitygroup detail	220
6.27.3	securitygroup create	220
6.27.4	securitygroup edit	220
6.27.5	securitygroup delete	221
6.27.6	securitygroup rule-list	221
6.27.7	securitygroup rule-add	221
6.27.8	securitygroup rule-edit	222
6.27.9	securitygroup rule-remove	223
6.27.10	securitygroup interface-list	224
6.27.11	securitygroup interface-add	224
6.27.12	securitygroup interface-remove	225
6.27.13	securitygroup event-log	225
6.28	SSH Keys	225
6.28.1	sshkey add	225
6.28.2	sshkey remove	226
6.28.3	sshkey edit	226
6.28.4	sshkey list	227
6.28.5	sshkey print	227
6.29	SSL Certificates	227
6.29.1	ssl add	227
6.29.2	ssl download	228

6.29.3	ssl edit	228
6.29.4	ssl list	229
6.29.5	ssl remove	229
6.30	Subnets	229
6.30.1	subnet cancel	229
6.30.2	subnet create	230
6.30.3	subnet detail	231
6.30.4	subnet edit	231
6.30.5	subnet list	231
6.30.6	subnet lookup	232
6.30.7	subnet edit-ip	232
6.30.8	subnet route	233
6.30.9	subnet clear-route	233
6.31	Tag Commands	234
6.31.1	tags list	234
6.31.2	tags set	234
6.31.3	tags details	235
6.31.4	tags delete	235
6.31.5	tags taggable	235
6.31.6	tags cleanup	236
6.32	Support Tickets	236
6.32.1	ticket create	236
6.32.2	ticket detail	237
6.32.3	ticket list	237
6.32.4	ticket update	238
6.32.5	ticket upload	238
6.32.6	ticket subjects	239
6.32.7	ticket summary	239
6.32.8	ticket attach	239
6.32.9	ticket detach	239
6.33	Users	240
6.33.1	user list	240
6.33.2	user detail	240
6.33.3	user notifications	241
6.33.4	user permissions	241
6.33.5	user edit-notifications	241
6.33.6	user edit-permissions	242
6.33.7	user edit-details	242
6.33.8	user create	243
6.33.9	user delete	244
6.33.10	user device-access	244
6.33.11	user vpn-manual	244
6.33.12	user vpn-subnet	245
6.33.13	user remove-access	245
6.34	VLANs	246
6.34.1	vlan create	246
6.34.2	vlan create-options	246
6.34.3	vlan detail	247
6.34.4	vlan edit	247
6.34.5	vlan list	248
6.34.6	vlan cancel	248
6.35	Working with Virtual Servers	248
6.35.1	virtual bandwidth	252
6.35.2	virtual cancel	253

6.35.3	virtual capture	253
6.35.4	virtual create	254
6.35.5	virtual create-options	256
6.35.6	virtual dns-sync	257
6.35.7	virtual edit	257
6.35.8	virtual list	258
6.35.9	virtual pause	259
6.35.10	virtual power-on	259
6.35.11	virtual power-off	260
6.35.12	virtual resume	260
6.35.13	virtual rescue	260
6.35.14	virtual reboot	261
6.35.15	virtual ready	261
6.35.16	virtual upgrade	262
6.35.17	virtual usage	262
6.35.18	virtual storage	263
6.35.19	virtual billing	263
6.35.20	virtual detail	263
6.35.21	virtual reload	264
6.35.22	virtual credentials	264
6.35.23	virtual migrate	265
6.35.24	virtual authorize-storage	265
6.35.25	virtual monitoring	266
6.35.26	virtual access	266
6.35.27	Reserved Capacity	266
6.35.28	Placement Groups	267
7	Contributing	271
7.1	Contribution Guide	271
7.1.1	Code Organization	271
7.1.2	Setting Up A Dev Environment	271
7.1.3	Testing	272
7.1.4	Documentation	273
7.1.5	Style	273
7.1.6	Contributing	273
7.1.7	Developer Resources	273
7.2	Command-Line Interface Developer Guide	273
7.2.1	First Example	274
7.2.2	Arguments	275
7.2.3	Accessing the API	275
7.2.4	Aborting execution	276
7.2.5	Documenting Commands	276
7.2.6	Architecture	277
8	External Links	279
	Python Module Index	281
	Index	283

[API Docs](#) | [GitHub](#) | [Issues](#) | [Pull Requests](#) | [PyPI](#) |

This is the documentation to SoftLayer's Python API Bindings. These bindings use SoftLayer's [XML-RPC](#) interface in order to manage SoftLayer services.

INSTALLATION

1.1 What's Included

When you install softlayer-python you will get the following:

- a python package called 'SoftLayer' (casing is important) available in your python path.
- a command-line client placed in your system path named 'slcli'.

1.2 Using Pip

Install via pip:

```
$ pip install softlayer
```

1.3 Debian/Ubuntu

For Debian “jessie” (currently testing) and Ubuntu 14.04, official system packages are available. **These are typically a couple versions behind so it is recommended to install from pypi if problems are encountered.**

```
$ sudo apt-get install python-softlayer
```

1.4 From Source

The project is developed on GitHub, at <https://github.com/softlayer/softlayer-python>.

Install from source via pip (requires [git](#)):

```
$ pip install git+git://github.com/softlayer/softlayer-python.git
```

You can clone the public repository:

```
$ git clone git@github.com:softlayer/softlayer-python.git
```

Or, Download the [tarball](#):

```
$ curl -OL https://github.com/softlayer/softlayer-python/tarball/master
```

Or, download the [zipball](#):

```
$ curl -OL https://github.com/softlayer/softlayer-python/zipball/master
```

Once you have a copy of the source you can install it with one of the following commands:

```
$ python setup.py install
```

Or:

```
$ pip install .
```

For more information about working with the source, or contributing to the project, please see the [Contribution Guide](#).

CONFIGURATION FILE

The SoftLayer API bindings load your settings from a number of different locations.

- Input directly into `SoftLayer.create_client_from_env(...)`
- Environment variables (`SL_USERNAME`, `SL_API_KEY`)
- Config file locations (`~/.softlayer`, `/etc/softlayer.conf`)
- Or argument (`-C/path/to/config` or `--config=/path/to/config`)

The configuration file is INI-based and requires the `softlayer` section to be present. The only required fields are `username` and `api_key`. You can optionally supply the `endpoint_url` as well. This file is created automatically by the `slcli setup` command detailed here: [Configuration Setup](#).

Config Example

```
[softlayer]
username = username
api_key = oyVmeipYQCNrjVS4rF9bHWV7D75S6pa1fghF1384v7mwRCbHTfuJ8qRORIqoVnha
endpoint_url = https://api.softlayer.com/xmlrpc/v3/
timeout = 40
```

Cloud.ibm.com Config Example

```
[softlayer]
username = apikey
api_key = 123cNyhzg45Ab6789ADyzwR_2LAagNVbySgY73tAQOz1
endpoint_url = https://api.softlayer.com/rest/v3.1/
timeout = 40
```


API DOCUMENTATION

This is the primary API client to make API calls. It deals with constructing and executing XML-RPC calls against the SoftLayer API. Below are some links that will help to use the SoftLayer API.

- [SoftLayer API Documentation](#)
- [Source on GitHub](#)

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env(username="username", api_key="api_key")
>>> resp = client.call('Account', 'getObject')
>>> resp['companyName']
'Your Company'
```

3.1 Getting Started

You can pass in your username and api_key when creating a SoftLayer client instance. However, you can also set these in the environmental variables 'SL_USERNAME' and 'SL_API_KEY'.

Creating a client instance by passing in the username/api_key:

```
import SoftLayer
client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env(username='YOUR_USERNAME', api_key='YOUR_API_KEY')
↪ )
```

Creating a client instance with environmental variables set:

```
$ export SL_USERNAME=YOUR_USERNAME
$ export SL_API_KEY=YOUR_API_KEY
$ python
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
```

Below is an example of creating a client instance with more options. This will create a client with the private API endpoint (only accessible from the SoftLayer private network) and a timeout of 4 minutes.

```
client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env(username='YOUR_USERNAME',
                                          api_key='YOUR_API_KEY',
                                          endpoint_url=SoftLayer.API_PRIVATE_ENDPOINT,
                                          timeout=240)
```

3.2 Managers

For day-to-day operation, most users will find the managers to be the most convenient means for interacting with the API. Managers abstract a lot of the complexities of using the API into classes that provide a simpler interface to various services. These are higher-level interfaces to the SoftLayer API.

```
from SoftLayer import VSManager, Client
client = Client(...)
vs = VSManager(client)
vs.list_instances()
[...]
```

Available managers:

3.2.1 SoftLayer.account

Account manager

license

MIT, see License for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager(*client*)

Common functions for getting information from the Account service

Parameters

client (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

ack_event(*event_id*)

Acknowledge an event. This mostly prevents it from appearing as a notification in the control portal.

Parameters

event_id (*int*) – Notification_Occurrence_Event ID you want to ack

Returns

True on success, Exception otherwise.

static add_event_filter(*_filter*, *event_type*)

Add data to the object filter.

Param

_filter: event filter.

Param

string *event_type*: event type.

cancel_item(*identifier*, *reason*='No longer needed', *note*=None)

Cancels a specific billing item with a reason

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – Billing_Item id
- **reason** (*string*) – A cancellation reason
- **note** (*string*) – Custom note to set when cancelling. Defaults to information about who canceled the item.

Returns

bool

getBandwidthDetail(*identifier*)

Gets bandwidth pool detail.

Returns

bandwidth pool detail

get_account_all_billing_orders(*limit=100, mask=None*)

Gets all the topLevelBillingItems currently active on the account

Parameters

mask (*string*) – Object Mask

Returns

Billing_Item

get_account_billing_items(*mask=None*)

Gets all the topLevelBillingItems currently active on the account

Parameters

mask (*string*) – Object Mask

Returns

Billing_Item

get_active_account_licenses()

Gets all active account licenses.

Returns

Active account Licenses

get_active_virtual_licenses()

Gets all active virtual licenses account.

Returns

active virtual licenses account

get_bandwidth_pool_counts(*identifier*)

Gets a count of all servers in a bandwidth pool

Getting the server counts individually is significantly faster than pulling them in with the get_bandwidth_pools api call.

get_bandwidth_pools(*mask=None*)

Gets all the bandwidth pools on an account

get_billing_item(*identifier, mask=None*)

Gets details about a billing item

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – Billing_Item id
- **mask** (*string*) – Object mask to use.

Returns

Billing_Item

get_billing_item_from_invoice(*identifier, mask=None*)

Gets details about a billing item of a billing invoice item

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – Billing_Invoice_Item id

- **mask** – Object mask to use.

Returns

Billing_Item

get_billing_items(*identifier*)

Gets all topLevelBillingItems from a specific invoice

Parameters**identifier** (*int*) – Invoice Id**Returns**

Billing_Invoice_Item

get_event(*event_id*)

Gets details about a maintenance event

Parameters**event_id** (*int*) – Notification_Occurrence_Event ID**Returns**

Notification_Occurrence_Event

get_invoices(*limit=50, closed=False, get_all=False*)

Gets an accounts invoices.

Parameters

- **limit** (*int*) – Number of invoices to get back in a single call.
- **closed** (*bool*) – If True, will also get CLOSED invoices
- **get_all** (*bool*) – If True, will paginate through invoices until all have been retrieved.

Returns

Billing_Invoice

get_item_detail(*identifier*)

Gets details about a billing item

Parameters**identifier** (*int*) – Billing_Item id or Billing_Invoice_Item**Returns**

Billing_Item

get_network_message_delivery_accounts()

Gets all Network Message delivery accounts.

Returns

Network Message delivery accounts

get_routers(*location=None, mask=None*)

Gets all the routers currently active on the account

Parameters

- **mask** (*string*) – Object Mask
- **location** (*string*) – location string

Returns

Routers

get_summary()

Gets some basic account information

Returns

Account object

get_upcoming_events(event_type)

Retrieves a list of Notification_Occurrence_Events that have not ended yet

Param

String event_type: notification event type.

Returns

SoftLayer_Notification_Occurrence_Event

resolve_ids(identifier)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

3.2.2 SoftLayer.autoscale

Autoscale manager

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.**AutoScaleManager**(*client*)

Manager for interacting with Autoscale instances.

create(template)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::createObject()

Parameters

template – SoftLayer_Scale_Group

delete(identifier)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::forceDeleteObject()

Parameters

identifier – SoftLayer_Scale_Group id

details(identifier, mask=None)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::getObject()

Parameters

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group id
- **mask** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Group objectMask

edit(identifier, template)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::editObject()

Parameters

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group id

- **template** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group

get_logs(*identifier*, *mask=None*, *object_filter=None*)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::getLogs()

Parameters

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group Id
- **mask** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Group_Log objectMask
- **object_filter** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Group_Log objectFilter

get_policy(*identifier*, *mask=None*)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Policy::getObject()

Parameters

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Policy id
- **mask** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Policy objectMask

get_virtual_guests(*identifier*, *mask=None*)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::getVirtualGuestMembers()

Parameters

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group Id
- **mask** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Member objectMask

list(*mask=None*)

Calls SoftLayer_Account::getScaleGroups()

Parameters

- mask** – optional SoftLayer_Scale_Group objectMask

scale(*identifier*, *amount*)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::scale()

Parameters

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group Id
- **amount** – positive or negative number to scale the group by

scale_to(*identifier*, *amount*)

Calls SoftLayer_Scale_Group::scaleTo()

Parameters

- **identifier** – SoftLayer_Scale_Group Id
- **amount** – number to scale the group to.

3.2.3 SoftLayer.block

Block Storage Manager

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.block.**BlockStorageManager**(client)

Manages SoftLayer Block Storage volumes.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/block-storage>

assign_subnets_to_acl(access_id, subnet_ids)

Assigns subnet records to ACL for the access host.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: slcli block access-list <volume_id>

Parameters

- **access_id** (integer) – id of the access host
- **subnet_ids** (list) – The ids of the subnets to be assigned

Returns

Returns int array of assigned subnet ids

authorize_host_to_volume(volume_id, hardware_ids=None, virtual_guest_ids=None, ip_address_ids=None, subnet_ids=None)

Authorizes hosts to Storage Volumes

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The File volume to authorize hosts to
- **hardware_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Hardware ids
- **virtual_guest_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest ids
- **ip_address_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress ids
- **subnet_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet ids. Only use with File volumes.

Returns

Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage_Allowed_Host objects which now have access to the given volume

cancel_block_volume(volume_id, reason='No longer needed', immediate=False)

Cancels the given block storage volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (integer) – The volume ID
- **reason** (string) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate_flag** (boolean) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

cancel_snapshot_space(volume_id, reason='No longer needed', immediate=False)

Cancels snapshot space for a given volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (integer) – The volume ID
- **reason** (string) – The reason for cancellation

- **immediate_flag** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

cancel_volume(*volume_id*, *reason*='No longer needed', *immediate*=False)

Cancels the given storage volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The volume ID
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate_flag** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

convert_dep_dupe(*volume_id*)

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume.

convert_dupe_status(*volume_id*)

Get the Clone split/move status completion of a duplicate volume

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume.

create_or_update_lun_id(*volume_id*, *lun_id*)

Set the LUN ID on a volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **lun_id** (*integer*) – LUN ID to set on the volume

Returns

a SoftLayer_Network_Storage_Property object

create_snapshot(*volume_id*, *notes*="", ***kwargs*)

Creates a snapshot on the given block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **notes** (*string*) – The notes or “name” to assign the snapshot

Returns

Returns the id of the new snapshot

deauthorize_host_to_volume(*volume_id*, *hardware_ids*=None, *virtual_guest_ids*=None, *ip_address_ids*=None, *subnet_ids*=None)

Revokes authorization of hosts to File Storage Volumes

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The File volume to deauthorize hosts to
- **hardware_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Hardware ids
- **virtual_guest_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest ids
- **ip_address_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IPAddress ids
- **subnet_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet ids. Only use with File volumes

Returns

Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage_Allowed_Host objects which have access to the given File volume

delete_snapshot(*snapshot_id*)

Deletes the specified snapshot object.

Parameters

snapshot_id – The ID of the snapshot object to delete.

disable_snapshots(*volume_id*, *schedule_type*)

Disables snapshots for a specific block volume at a given schedule

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **schedule_type** (*string*) – ‘HOURLY’|‘DAILY’|‘WEEKLY’

Returns

Returns whether successfully disabled or not

disaster_recovery_failover_to_replicant(*volume_id*, *replicant_id*)

Disaster Recovery Failover to a volume replicant.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **replicant** (*integer*) – ID of replicant to failover to

Returns

Returns whether failover to successful or not

enable_snapshots(*volume_id*, *schedule_type*, *retention_count*, *minute*, *hour*, *day_of_week*, ***kwargs*)

Enables snapshots for a specific block volume at a given schedule

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **schedule_type** (*string*) – ‘HOURLY’|‘DAILY’|‘WEEKLY’
- **retention_count** (*integer*) – Number of snapshots to be kept
- **minute** (*integer*) – Minute when to take snapshot
- **hour** (*integer*) – Hour when to take snapshot
- **day_of_week** (*string*) – Day when to take snapshot

Returns

Returns whether successfully scheduled or not

failback_from_replicant(*volume_id*)

Failback from a volume replicant.

Parameters

volume_id (*integer*) – The id of the volume

Returns

Returns whether failback was successful or not

failover_to_replicant(*volume_id*, *replicant_id*)

Failover to a volume replicant.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **replicant_id** (*integer*) – ID of replicant to failover to

Returns

Returns whether failover was successful or not

get_block_volume_access_list(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

get_block_volume_details(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns details about the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns details about the specified volume.

get_block_volume_snapshot_list(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

get_buckets(*object_id*)

Return buckets data of the cloud storage.

:param object_id cloud object storage identifier

Returns: Get buckets

get_cloud_list()

Returns a list cloud object storage.

return: Returns a list cloud object storage.

get_end_points(*object_id*)

Returns a collection of endpoint URLs available to this IBM Cloud Object Storage account.

:param object_id cloud object storage identifier Returns: Returns a collection of endpoint URLs.

get_network_message_delivery_accounts(*object_id*)

Return object data of the cloud storage.

:param *object_id* cloud object storage identifier Returns: Get instances

get_replication_locations(*volume_id*)

Acquires list of the datacenters to which a volume can be replicated.

Parameters

volume_id – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated

Returns

Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage objects

get_replication_partners(*volume_id*)

Acquires list of replicant volumes pertaining to the given volume.

Parameters

volume_id – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated

Returns

Returns an array of SoftLayer_Location objects

get_subnets_in_acl(*access_id*)

Returns a list of subnet records for the access host.

access_id is the *host_id* obtained by: `slcli block access-list <volume_id>`

Parameters

access_id (*integer*) – id of the access host

Returns

Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet objects

get_volume_access_list(*volume_id*, *kwargs*)**

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

get_volume_count_limits()

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

Returns

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

get_volume_details(*volume_id*, *kwargs*)**

Returns details about the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns details about the specified volume.

get_volume_snapshot_list(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

get_volume_snapshot_notification_status(*volume_id*)

returns Enabled/Disabled status of snapshot space usage threshold warning for a given volume.

Parameters

volume_id – ID of volume.

Returns

Enables/Disables snapshot space usage threshold warning for a given volume.

list_block_volume_limit()

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

Returns

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

list_block_volumes(*datacenter=None*, *username=None*, *storage_type=None*, *order=None*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of block volumes.

Parameters

- **datacenter** – Datacenter short name (e.g.: dal09)
- **username** – Name of volume.
- **storage_type** – Type of volume: Endurance or Performance
- **order** – Volume order id.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns a list of block volumes.

list_volume_schedules(*volume_id*)

Lists schedules for a given volume

Parameters

volume_id (*integer*) – The id of the volume

Returns

Returns list of schedules assigned to a given volume

order_block_volume(*storage_type*, *location*, *size*, *os_type*, *iops=None*, *tier_level=None*,
snapshot_size=None, *service_offering='storage_as_a_service'*,
hourly_billing_flag=False)

Places an order for a block volume.

Parameters

- **storage_type** – ‘performance’ or ‘endurance’
- **location** – Datacenter in which to order iSCSI volume

- **size** – Size of the desired volume, in GB
- **os_type** – OS Type to use for volume alignment, see help for list
- **iops** – Number of IOPs for a “Performance” order
- **tier_level** – Tier level to use for an “Endurance” order
- **snapshot_size** – The size of optional snapshot space, if snapshot space should also be ordered (None if not ordered)
- **service_offering** – Requested offering package to use in the order (‘storage_as_a_service’, ‘enterprise’, or ‘performance’)
- **hourly_billing_flag** – Billing type, monthly (False) or hourly (True), default to monthly.

order_duplicate_volume(*origin_volume_id*, *origin_snapshot_id=None*, *duplicate_size=None*, *duplicate_iops=None*, *duplicate_tier_level=None*, *duplicate_snapshot_size=None*, *hourly_billing_flag=False*, *dependent_duplicate=False*)

Places an order for a duplicate volume.

Parameters

- **origin_volume_id** – The ID of the origin volume to be duplicated
- **origin_snapshot_id** – Origin snapshot ID to use for duplication
- **duplicate_size** – Size/capacity for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_iops** – The IOPS per GB for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_tier_level** – Tier level for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_snapshot_size** – Snapshot space size for the duplicate
- **hourly_billing_flag** – Billing type, monthly (False) or hourly (True), default to monthly.

Returns

Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_modified_volume(*volume_id*, *new_size=None*, *new_iops=None*, *new_tier_level=None*)

Places an order for modifying an existing block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the volume to be modified
- **new_size** – The new size/capacity for the volume
- **new_iops** – The new IOPS for the volume
- **new_tier_level** – The new tier level for the volume

Returns

Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_replicant_volume(*volume_id*, *snapshot_schedule*, *location*, *tier=None*, *os_type=None*)

Places an order for a replicant volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated
- **snapshot_schedule** – The primary volume’s snapshot schedule to use for replication

- **location** – The location for the ordered replicant volume
- **tier** – The tier (IOPS per GB) of the primary volume
- **os_type** – The OS type of the primary volume

Returns

Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_snapshot_space(*volume_id, capacity, tier, upgrade, **kwargs*)

Orders snapshot space for the given block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **capacity** (*integer*) – The capacity to order, in GB
- **tier** (*float*) – The tier level of the block volume, in IOPS per GB
- **upgrade** (*boolean*) – Flag to indicate if this order is an upgrade

Returns

Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

refresh_dupe(*volume_id, snapshot_id*)

“Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **snapshot_id** (*integer*) – The id of the snapshot

remove_subnets_from_acl(*access_id, subnet_ids*)

Removes subnet records from ACL for the access host.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: slcli block access-list <volume_id>

Parameters

- **access_id** (*integer*) – id of the access host
- **subnet_ids** (*list*) – The ids of the subnets to be removed

Returns

Returns int array of removed subnet ids

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly ‘identifier’ can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

restore_from_snapshot(*volume_id, snapshot_id*)

Restores a specific volume from a snapshot

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **snapshot_id** (*integer*) – The id of the restore point

Returns

Returns whether successfully restored or not

set_credential_password(*access_id*, *password*)

Sets the password for an access host

Parameters

- **access_id** (*integer*) – id of the access host
- **password** (*string*) – password to set

set_volume_snapshot_notification(*volume_id*, *enable*)

Enables/Disables snapshot space usage threshold warning for a given volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **enable** – Enable/Disable flag for snapshot warning notification.

Returns

Enables/Disables snapshot space usage threshold warning for a given volume.

volume_set_note(*volume_id*, *note*)

Set the notes for an existing block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the volume to be modified
- **note** – the note

Returns

Returns true if success

3.2.4 SoftLayer.cdn

CDN Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager(*client*)

Manage Content Delivery Networks in the account.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/cdn> <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/infrastructure/CDN?topic=CDN-about-content-delivery-networks-cdn->

Parameters

client (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_origin(*unique_id*, *origin*, *path*, *origin_type*='server', *header*=None, *port*=80, *protocol*='http', *bucket_name*=None, *file_extensions*=None, *optimize_for*='web', *cache_query*='include all')

Creates an origin path for an existing CDN.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*str*) – The unique ID associated with the CDN.
- **path** (*str*) – relative path to the domain provided, e.g. “/articles/video”

- **origin** (*str*) – ip address or hostname if origin_type=server, API endpoint for your S3 object storage if origin_type=storage
- **origin_type** (*str*) – it can be ‘server’ or ‘storage’ types.
- **header** (*str*) – the edge server uses the host header to communicate with the origin. It defaults to hostname. (optional)
- **port** (*int*) – the http port number (default: 80)
- **protocol** (*str*) – the protocol of the origin (default: HTTP)
- **bucket_name** (*str*) – name of the available resource
- **file_extensions** (*str*) – file extensions that can be stored in the CDN, e.g. “jpg,png”
- **optimize_for** (*str*) – performance configuration, available options: web, video, and file where:
 - ‘web’ = ‘General web delivery’
 - ‘video’ = ‘Video on demand optimization’
 - ‘file’ = ‘Large file optimization’
- **cache_query** (*str*) – rules with the following formats: ‘include-all’, ‘ignore-all’, ‘include: space separated query-names’, ‘ignore: space separated query-names.’

Returns

a CDN origin path object

edit(*identifier*, *header=None*, *http_port=None*, *https_port=None*, *origin=None*, *respect_headers=None*, *cache=None*, *performance_configuration=None*)

Edit the cdn object.

Parameters

- **identifier** (*string*) – The CDN identifier.
- **header** – The cdn Host header.
- **http_port** – The cdn HTTP port.
- **https_port** – The cdn HTTPS port.
- **origin** – The cdn Origin server address.
- **respect_headers** – The cdn Respect headers.
- **cache** – The cdn Cache key optimization.
- **performance_configuration** – The cdn performance configuration.

Returns

SoftLayer_Container_Network_CdnMarketplace_Configuration_Mapping[].

property end_date

Retrieve the cdn usage metric end date.

static get_cache_key_query_rule(*cache_type*, *cache*)

Get the cdn object detail.

Parameters

- **cache_type** (*string*) – Cache type.
- **cache** – Cache description.

Returns

string value.

get_cdn(*unique_id*, ***kwargs*)

Retrieves the information about the CDN account object.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*str*) – The unique ID associated with the CDN.
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – header-level option (mask)

Returns

The CDN object

get_origins(*unique_id*, ***kwargs*)

Retrieves list of origin pull mappings for a specified CDN account.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*str*) – The unique ID associated with the CDN.
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – header-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns

The list of origin paths in the CDN object.

get_usage_metrics(*unique_id*, *history=30*, *frequency='aggregate'*)

Retrieves the cdn usage metrics.

It uses the ‘days’ argument if start_date and end_date are None.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*int*) – The CDN uniqueId from which the usage metrics will be obtained.
- **history** (*int*) – Last N days, default days is 30.
- **frequency** (*str*) – It can be day, week, month and aggregate. The default is “aggregate”.

Returns

A Container_Network_CdnMarketplace_Metrics object

list_cdn(***kwargs*)

Lists Content Delivery Networks for the active user.

Parameters

****kwargs** (*dict*) – header-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns

The list of CDN objects in the account

purge_content(*unique_id*, *path*)

Purges a URL or path from the CDN.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*str*) – The unique ID associated with the CDN.
- **path** (*str*) – A string of url or path that should be purged.

Returns

A Container_Network_CdnMarketplace_Configuration_Cache_Purge array object

remove_origin(*unique_id*, *path*)

Removes an origin pull mapping with the given origin pull ID.

Parameters

- **unique_id** (*str*) – The unique ID associated with the CDN.
- **path** (*str*) – The origin path to delete.

Returns

A string value

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

property start_data

Retrieve the cdn usage metric start date.

3.2.5 SoftLayer.dedicatedhost

DH Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see License for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.**DedicatedHostManager**(*client*, *ordering_manager=None*)

Manages SoftLayer Dedicated Hosts.

See product information here <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/dedicated>

Parameters

- **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance
- **ordering_manager** (SoftLayer.managers.OrderingManager) – an optional manager to handle ordering. If none is provided, one will be auto initialized.

cancel_guests(*host_id*)

Cancel all guests into the dedicated host immediately.

To cancel an specified guest use the method VSManger.cancel_instance()

Parameters

host_id – The ID of the dedicated host.

Returns

The id, fqdn and status of all guests into a dictionary. The status could be 'Cancelled' or an exception message, The dictionary is empty if there isn't any guest in the dedicated host.

Example::

```
# Cancel guests of dedicated host id 12345 result = mgr.cancel_guests(12345)
```

cancel_host(*host_id*)

Cancel a dedicated host immediately, it fails if there are still guests in the host.

Parameters

host_id – The ID of the dedicated host to be cancelled.

Returns

True on success or an exception

Example::

```
# Cancels dedicated host id 12345 result = mgr.cancel_host(12345)
```

get_create_options()

Returns valid options for ordering a dedicated host.

get_host(*host_id*, ***kwargs*)

Get details about a dedicated host.

:param integer : the host ID :returns: A dictionary containing host information.

Example:

```
# Print out host ID 12345.
dh = mgr.get_host(12345)
print dh

# Print out only name and backendRouter for instance 12345
object_mask = "mask[name,backendRouter[id]]"
dh = mgr.get_host(12345, mask=mask)
print dh
```

get_router_options(*datacenter=None*, *flavor=None*)

Returns available backend routers for the dedicated host.

list_guests(*host_id*, *tags=None*, *cpus=None*, *memory=None*, *hostname=None*, *domain=None*, *local_disk=None*, *nic_speed=None*, *public_ip=None*, *private_ip=None*, ***kwargs*)

Retrieve a list of all virtual servers on the dedicated host.

Example:

```
# Print out a list of instances with 4 cpu cores in the host id 12345.

for vsi in mgr.list_guests(host_id=12345, cpus=4):
    print vsi['fullyQualifiedDomainName'], vsi['primaryIpAddress']

# Using a custom object-mask. Will get ONLY what is specified
object_mask = "mask[hostname,monitoringRobot[robotStatus]]"
for vsi in mgr.list_guests(mask=object_mask, cpus=4):
    print vsi
```

Parameters

- **host_id** (*integer*) – the identifier of dedicated host
- **tags** (*list*) – filter based on list of tags
- **cpus** (*integer*) – filter based on number of CPUS

- **memory** (*integer*) – filter based on amount of memory
- **hostname** (*string*) – filter based on hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – filter based on domain
- **local_disk** (*string*) – filter based on local_disk
- **nic_speed** (*integer*) – filter based on network speed (in MBPS)
- **public_ip** (*string*) – filter based on public ip address
- **private_ip** (*string*) – filter based on private ip address
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns

Returns a list of dictionaries representing the matching virtual servers

list_instances(*tags=None, cpus=None, memory=None, hostname=None, disk=None, datacenter=None, **kwargs*)

Retrieve a list of all dedicated hosts on the account

Parameters

- **tags** (*list*) – filter based on list of tags
- **cpus** (*integer*) – filter based on number of CPUS
- **memory** (*integer*) – filter based on amount of memory
- **hostname** (*string*) – filter based on hostname
- **disk** (*string*) – filter based on disk
- **datacenter** (*string*) – filter based on datacenter
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns

Returns a list of dictionaries representing the matching dedicated host.

place_order(*hostname, domain, location, flavor, hourly, router=None*)

Places an order for a dedicated host.

See `get_create_options()` for valid arguments.

Parameters

- **hostname** (*string*) – server hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – server domain name
- **location** (*string*) – location (datacenter) name
- **hourly** (*boolean*) – True if using hourly pricing (default). False for monthly.
- **router** (*int*) – an optional value for selecting a backend router

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly ‘identifier’ can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

verify_order(*hostname, domain, location, hourly, flavor, router=None*)

Verifies an order for a dedicated host.

See [place_order\(\)](#) for a list of available options.

3.2.6 SoftLayer.dns

DNS Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager(*client*)

Manage SoftLayer DNS.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/dns>

Parameters

client (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

create_record(*zone_id, record, record_type, data, ttl=60*)

Create a resource record on a domain.

Parameters

- **id** (*integer*) – the zone's ID
- **record** – the name of the record to add
- **record_type** – the type of record (A, AAAA, CNAME, TXT, etc.)
- **data** – the record's value
- **ttl** (*integer*) – the TTL or time-to-live value (default: 60)

create_record_mx(*zone_id, record, data, ttl=60, priority=10*)

Create a mx resource record on a domain.

Parameters

- **id** (*integer*) – the zone's ID
- **record** – the name of the record to add
- **data** – the record's value
- **ttl** (*integer*) – the TTL or time-to-live value (default: 60)
- **priority** (*integer*) – the priority of the target host

create_record_ptr(*record, data, ttl=60*)

Create a reverse record.

Parameters

- **record** – the public ip address of device for which you would like to manage reverse DNS.
- **data** – the record's value
- **ttl** (*integer*) – the TTL or time-to-live value (default: 60)

create_record_srv(*zone_id, record, data, protocol, port, service, ttl=60, priority=20, weight=10*)

Create a resource record on a domain.

Parameters

- **id** (*integer*) – the zone’s ID
- **record** – the name of the record to add
- **data** – the record’s value
- **protocol** (*string*) – the protocol of the service, usually either TCP or UDP.
- **port** (*integer*) – the TCP or UDP port on which the service is to be found.
- **service** (*string*) – the symbolic name of the desired service.
- **ttl** (*integer*) – the TTL or time-to-live value (default: 60)
- **priority** (*integer*) – the priority of the target host (default: 20)
- **weight** (*integer*) – relative weight for records with same priority (default: 10)

create_zone(*zone, serial=None*)

Create a zone for the specified zone.

Parameters

- **zone** – the zone name to create
- **serial** – serial value on the zone (default: `strftime('%Y%m%d01')`)

delete_record(*record_id*)

Delete a resource record by its ID.

Parameters

- id** (*integer*) – the record’s ID

delete_zone(*zone_id*)

Delete a zone by its ID.

Parameters

- zone_id** (*integer*) – the zone ID to delete

dump_zone(*zone_id*)

Retrieve a zone dump in BIND format.

Parameters

- id** (*integer*) – The zone ID to dump

edit_record(*record*)

Update an existing record with the options provided.

The provided dict must include an ‘id’ key and value corresponding to the record that should be updated.

Parameters

- record** (*dict*) – the record to update

edit_zone(*zone*)

Update an existing zone with the options provided.

The provided dict must include an ‘id’ key and value corresponding to the zone that should be updated.

Parameters

- zone** (*dict*) – the zone to update

get_record(*record_id*)

Get a DNS record.

Parameters

id (*integer*) – the record’s ID

get_records(*zone_id*, *ttl=None*, *data=None*, *host=None*, *record_type=None*)

List, and optionally filter, records within a zone.

Parameters

- **zone** – the zone name in which to search.
- **ttl** (*int*) – time in seconds
- **data** (*str*) – the records data
- **host** (*str*) – record’s host
- **record_type** (*str*) – the type of record

Returns

A list of dictionaries representing the matching records within the specified zone.

get_zone(*zone_id*, *records=True*)

Get a zone and its records.

Parameters

zone – the zone name

Returns

A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified zone.

list_zones(***kwargs*)

Retrieve a list of all DNS zones.

Parameters

****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns

A list of dictionaries representing the matching zones.

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly ‘identifier’ can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

sync_host_record(*zone_id*, *hostname*, *ip_address*, *record_type='a'*, *ttl=7200*)

For a given zone_id, will set hostname’s A record to ip_address

Parameters

- **zone_id** (*integer*) – The zone id for the domain
- **hostname** (*string*) – host part of the record
- **ip_address** (*string*) – data part of the record
- **ttl** (*integer*) – TTL for the record
- **record_type** (*string*) – ‘a’ or ‘aaaa’

sync_ptr_record(*ptr_domains, ip_address, fqdn, ttl=7200*)

Sync PTR record.

Parameters

- **ptr_domains** (*dict*) – result from `SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest.getReverseDomainRecords` or `SoftLayer_Hardware_Server.getReverseDomainRecords`
- **ip_address** (*string*) – ip address to sync with
- **fqdn** (*string*) – Fully Qualified Domain Name
- **ttl** (*integer*) – TTL for the record

3.2.7 SoftLayer.email

Email manager

license

MIT, see License for more details.

class `SoftLayer.managers.email.EmailManager`(*client*)

Common functions for getting information from the email service

Parameters

client (`SoftLayer.API.BaseClient`) – the client instance

editObject(*identifier, username=None, password=None*)

Edit email delivery account related details.

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – The ID of the email account
- **username** (*string*) – username of the email account.
- **email** (*string*) – email of the email account.
- **password** (*string*) – password of the email account to be updated to.

get_account_overview(*identifier*)

Gets all the Network Message Delivery Account Overview

Returns

Network Message Delivery Account overview

get_instance(*identifier*)

Gets the Network_Message_Delivery_Email_Sendgrid instance

Returns

Network_Message_Delivery_Email_Sendgrid

get_statistics(*identifier, days=30*)

gets statistics from email accounts

Days

range number

Returns

statistics Network Message Delivery Account

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list**update_email(*identifier*, *email*)**

Edit email address delivery account .

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – The ID of the email account
- **email** (*string*) – email of the email account.

3.2.8 SoftLayer.event_log

Network Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.event_log.EventLogManager(*client*)

Provides an interface for the SoftLayer Event Log Service.

See product information here: http://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Event_Log

static build_filter(*date_min=None, date_max=None, obj_event=None, obj_id=None, obj_type=None, utc_offset=None*)

Returns a query filter that can be passed into EventLogManager.get_event_logs

Parameters

- **date_min** (*string*) – Lower bound date in MM/DD/YYYY format
- **date_max** (*string*) – Upper bound date in MM/DD/YYYY format
- **obj_event** (*string*) – The name of the events we want to filter by
- **obj_id** (*int*) – The id of the event we want to filter by
- **obj_type** (*string*) – The type of event we want to filter by
- **utc_offset** (*string*) – The UTC offset we want to use when converting date_min and date_max. (default '+0000')

Returns

dict: The generated query filter

get_event_log_types()

Returns a list of event log types

Returns

List of event log types

get_event_logs(*request_filter=None, log_limit=20, iterator=True*)

Returns a list of event logs

Example:

```
event_mgr = SoftLayer.EventLogManager(env.client)
request_filter = event_mgr.build_filter(date_min="01/01/2019", date_max="02/01/
↪2019")
logs = event_mgr.get_event_logs(request_filter)
for log in logs:
    print("Event Name: {}".format(log['eventName']))
```

Parameters

- **request_filter** (*dict*) – filter dict
- **log_limit** (*int*) – number of results to get in one API call
- **iterator** (*bool*) – False will only make one API call for log_limit results. True will keep making API calls until all logs have been retrieved. There may be a lot of these.

Returns

List of event logs. If iterator=True, will return a python generator object instead.

3.2.9 SoftLayer.file

File Storage Manager

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.file.**FileStorageManager**(*client*)

Manages file Storage volumes.

authorize_host_to_volume(*volume_id*, *hardware_ids=None*, *virtual_guest_ids=None*,
ip_address_ids=None, *subnet_ids=None*)

Authorizes hosts to Storage Volumes

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The File volume to authorize hosts to
- **hardware_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Hardware ids
- **virtual_guest_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest ids
- **ip_address_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress ids
- **subnet_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet ids. Only use with File volumes.

Returns

Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage_Allowed_Host objects which now have access to the given volume

cancel_file_volume(*volume_id*, *reason='No longer needed'*, *immediate=False*)

Cancels the given file storage volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The volume ID
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

cancel_snapshot_space(*volume_id*, *reason*='No longer needed', *immediate*=False)

Cancels snapshot space for a given volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The volume ID
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate_flag** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

cancel_volume(*volume_id*, *reason*='No longer needed', *immediate*=False)

Cancels the given storage volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The volume ID
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason for cancellation
- **immediate_flag** (*boolean*) – Cancel immediately or on anniversary date

convert_dep_dupe(*volume_id*)

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume.

convert_dupe_status(*volume_id*)

Get the Clone split/move status completion of a duplicate volume

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume.

create_snapshot(*volume_id*, *notes*="", ***kwargs*)

Creates a snapshot on the given block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **notes** (*string*) – The notes or “name” to assign the snapshot

Returns

Returns the id of the new snapshot

deauthorize_host_to_volume(*volume_id*, *hardware_ids*=None, *virtual_guest_ids*=None, *ip_address_ids*=None, *subnet_ids*=None)

Revokes authorization of hosts to File Storage Volumes

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The File volume to deauthorize hosts to
- **hardware_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Hardware ids
- **virtual_guest_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest ids
- **ip_address_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress ids
- **subnet_ids** – A List of SoftLayer_Network_Subnet ids. Only use with File volumes

Returns

Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage_Allowed_Host objects which have access to the given File volume

delete_snapshot(*snapshot_id*)

Deletes the specified snapshot object.

Parameters

snapshot_id – The ID of the snapshot object to delete.

disable_snapshots(*volume_id, schedule_type*)

Disables snapshots for a specific block volume at a given schedule

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **schedule_type** (*string*) – ‘HOURLY’|‘DAILY’|‘WEEKLY’

Returns

Returns whether successfully disabled or not

disaster_recovery_failover_to_replicant(*volume_id, replicant_id*)

Disaster Recovery Failover to a volume replicant.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **replicant** (*integer*) – ID of replicant to failover to

Returns

Returns whether failover to successful or not

enable_snapshots(*volume_id, schedule_type, retention_count, minute, hour, day_of_week, **kwargs*)

Enables snapshots for a specific block volume at a given schedule

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **schedule_type** (*string*) – ‘HOURLY’|‘DAILY’|‘WEEKLY’
- **retention_count** (*integer*) – Number of snapshots to be kept
- **minute** (*integer*) – Minute when to take snapshot
- **hour** (*integer*) – Hour when to take snapshot
- **day_of_week** (*string*) – Day when to take snapshot

Returns

Returns whether successfully scheduled or not

failback_from_replicant(*volume_id*)

Failback from a volume replicant.

Parameters

volume_id (*integer*) – The id of the volume

Returns

Returns whether failback was successful or not

failover_to_replicant(*volume_id, replicant_id*)

Failover to a volume replicant.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume

- **replicant_id** (*integer*) – ID of replicant to failover to

Returns

Returns whether failover was successful or not

get_end_points(*object_id*)

Returns a collection of endpoint URLs available to this IBM Cloud Object Storage account.

:param object_id cloud object storage identifier Returns: Returns a collection of endpoint URLs.

get_file_volume_access_list(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

get_file_volume_details(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns details about the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns details about the specified volume.

get_file_volume_snapshot_list(*volume_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

get_network_message_delivery_accounts(*object_id*)

Return object data of the cloud storage.

:param object_id cloud object storage identifier Returns: Get instances

get_replication_locations(*volume_id*)

Acquires list of the datacenters to which a volume can be replicated.

Parameters

volume_id – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated

Returns

Returns an array of SoftLayer_Network_Storage objects

get_replication_partners(*volume_id*)

Acquires list of replicant volumes pertaining to the given volume.

Parameters

volume_id – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated

Returns

Returns an array of SoftLayer_Location objects

get_volume_access_list(*volume_id*, ****kwargs**)

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns a list of authorized hosts for a specified volume.

get_volume_count_limits()

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

Returns

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

get_volume_details(*volume_id*, ****kwargs**)

Returns details about the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns details about the specified volume.

get_volume_snapshot_list(*volume_id*, ****kwargs**)

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns a list of snapshots for the specified volume.

get_volume_snapshot_notification_status(*volume_id*)

returns Enabled/Disabled status of snapshot space usage threshold warning for a given volume.

Parameters

volume_id – ID of volume.

Returns

Enables/Disables snapshot space usage threshold warning for a given volume.

list_file_volume_limit()

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

Returns

Returns a list of block volume count limit.

list_file_volumes(*datacenter=None*, *username=None*, *storage_type=None*, *order=None*, ****kwargs**)

Returns a list of file volumes.

Parameters

- **datacenter** – Datacenter short name (e.g.: dal09)
- **username** – Name of volume.
- **storage_type** – Type of volume: Endurance or Performance
- **order** – Volume order id.
- **kwargs** –

Returns

Returns a list of file volumes.

list_volume_schedules(*volume_id*)

Lists schedules for a given volume

Parameters

volume_id (*integer*) – The id of the volume

Returns

Returns list of schedules assigned to a given volume

order_duplicate_volume(*origin_volume_id*, *origin_snapshot_id=None*, *duplicate_size=None*,
duplicate_iops=None, *duplicate_tier_level=None*,
duplicate_snapshot_size=None, *hourly_billing_flag=False*,
dependent_duplicate=False)

Places an order for a duplicate volume.

Parameters

- **origin_volume_id** – The ID of the origin volume to be duplicated
- **origin_snapshot_id** – Origin snapshot ID to use for duplication
- **duplicate_size** – Size/capacity for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_iops** – The IOPS per GB for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_tier_level** – Tier level for the duplicate volume
- **duplicate_snapshot_size** – Snapshot space size for the duplicate
- **hourly_billing_flag** – Billing type, monthly (False) or hourly (True), default to monthly.

Returns

Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_file_volume(*storage_type*, *location*, *size*, *iops=None*, *tier_level=None*, *snapshot_size=None*,
service_offering='storage_as_a_service', *hourly_billing_flag=False*)

Places an order for a file volume.

Parameters

- **storage_type** – ‘performance’ or ‘endurance’
- **location** – Name of the datacenter in which to order the volume
- **size** – Size of the desired volume, in GB
- **iops** – Number of IOPs for a “Performance” order
- **tier_level** – Tier level to use for an “Endurance” order
- **snapshot_size** – The size of optional snapshot space, if snapshot space should also be ordered (None if not ordered)

- **service_offering** – Requested offering package to use in the order ('storage_as_a_service', 'enterprise', or 'performance')
- **hourly_billing_flag** – Billing type, monthly (False) or hourly (True), default to monthly.

order_modified_volume(*volume_id*, *new_size=None*, *new_iops=None*, *new_tier_level=None*)

Places an order for modifying an existing block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the volume to be modified
- **new_size** – The new size/capacity for the volume
- **new_iops** – The new IOPS for the volume
- **new_tier_level** – The new tier level for the volume

Returns

Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_replicant_volume(*volume_id*, *snapshot_schedule*, *location*, *tier=None*, *os_type=None*)

Places an order for a replicant volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the primary volume to be replicated
- **snapshot_schedule** – The primary volume's snapshot schedule to use for replication
- **location** – The location for the ordered replicant volume
- **tier** – The tier (IOPS per GB) of the primary volume
- **os_type** – The OS type of the primary volume

Returns

Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

order_snapshot_space(*volume_id*, *capacity*, *tier*, *upgrade*, ***kwargs*)

Orders snapshot space for the given block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **capacity** (*integer*) – The capacity to order, in GB
- **tier** (*float*) – The tier level of the block volume, in IOPS per GB
- **upgrade** (*boolean*) – Flag to indicate if this order is an upgrade

Returns

Returns a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Receipt

refresh_dupe(*volume_id*, *snapshot_id*)

“Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **snapshot_id** (*integer*) – The id of the snapshot

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list**restore_from_snapshot(*volume_id*, *snapshot_id*)**

Restores a specific volume from a snapshot

Parameters

- **volume_id** (*integer*) – The id of the volume
- **snapshot_id** (*integer*) – The id of the restore point

Returns

Returns whether succesfully restored or not

set_volume_snapshot_notification(*volume_id*, *enable*)

Enables/Disables snapshot space usage threshold warning for a given volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – ID of volume.
- **enable** – Enable/Disable flag for snapshot warning notification.

Returns

Enables/Disables snapshot space usage threshold warning for a given volume.

volume_set_note(*volume_id*, *note*)

Set the notes for an existing block volume.

Parameters

- **volume_id** – The ID of the volume to be modified
- **note** – the note

Returns

Returns true if success

3.2.10 SoftLayer.firewall

Firewall Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.firewall.**FirewallManager**(*client*)

Manages SoftLayer firewalls

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/network-security>

Parameters

client ([SoftLayer.API.BaseClient](#)) – the client instance

add_standard_firewall(*server_id*, *is_virt=True*)

Creates a firewall for the specified virtual/hardware server.

Parameters

- **server_id** (*int*) – The ID of the server to create the firewall for
- **is_virt** (*bool*) – If true, will create the firewall for a virtual server, otherwise for a hardware server.

Returns

A dictionary containing the standard virtual server firewall order

add_vlan_firewall(*vlan_id*, *ha_enabled=False*)

Creates a firewall for the specified vlan.

Parameters

- **vlan_id** (*int*) – The ID of the vlan to create the firewall for
- **ha_enabled** (*bool*) – If True, an HA firewall will be created

Returns

A dictionary containing the VLAN firewall order

cancel_firewall(*firewall_id*, *dedicated=False*)

Cancels the specified firewall.

Parameters

- **firewall_id** (*int*) – Firewall ID to be cancelled.
- **dedicated** (*bool*) – If true, the firewall instance is dedicated, otherwise, the firewall instance is shared.

edit_dedicated_fwl_rules(*firewall_id*, *rules*)

Edit the rules for dedicated firewall.

Parameters

- **firewall_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID of the dedicated firewall
- **rules** (*list*) – the rules to be pushed on the firewall as defined by SoftLayer_Network_Firewall_Update_Request_Rule

edit_standard_fwl_rules(*firewall_id*, *rules*)

Edit the rules for standard firewall.

Parameters

- **firewall_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID of the standard firewall
- **rules** (*list*) – the rules to be pushed on the firewall as defined by SoftLayer_Network_Firewall_Update_Request_Rule

get_dedicated_fwl_rules(*firewall_id*)

Get the rules of a dedicated firewall.

Parameters

firewall_id (*integer*) – the instance ID of the dedicated firewall

Returns

A list of the rules.

get_dedicated_package(*ha_enabled=False*)

Retrieves the dedicated firewall package.

Parameters

ha_enabled (*bool*) – True if HA is to be enabled on the firewall False for No HA

Returns

A dictionary containing the dedicated virtual server firewall package

get_firewalls()

Returns a list of all firewalls on the account.

Returns

A list of firewalls on the current account.

get_firewalls_gatewalls()

Returns a list of all gateway firewalls (gatewalls) on the account.

returns: A list of gateway firewalls (gatewalls) on the current account.

get_instance(*firewall_id, mask=None*)

Get the firewall information

Parameters

firewall_id (*integer*) – the instance ID of the standard firewall

get_standard_fw_rules(*firewall_id*)

Get the rules of a standard firewall.

Parameters

firewall_id (*integer*) – the instance ID of the standard firewall

Returns

A list of the rules.

get_standard_package(*server_id, is_virt=True*)

Retrieves the standard firewall package for the virtual server.

Parameters

- **server_id** (*int*) – The ID of the server to create the firewall for
- **is_virt** (*bool*) – True if the ID provided is for a virtual server, False for a server

Returns

A dictionary containing the standard virtual server firewall package

get_summary(*identifier, start_date, end_date*)

Returns the metric data for the date range provided

:param integer metric_tracking_id

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

`SoftLayer.managers.firewall.has_firewall(vlan)`

Helper to determine whether or not a VLAN has a firewall.

Parameters

vlan (*dict*) – A dictionary representing a VLAN

Returns

True if the VLAN has a firewall, false if it doesn't.

3.2.11 SoftLayer.hardware

Hardware Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class `SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager`(*client, ordering_manager=None*)

Manage SoftLayer hardware servers.

Example:

```
# Initialize the Manager.
# env variables. These can also be specified in ~/.softlayer,
# or passed directly to SoftLayer.Client()
# SL_USERNAME = YOUR_USERNAME
# SL_API_KEY = YOUR_API_KEY
import SoftLayer
client = SoftLayer.Client()
mgr = SoftLayer.HardwareManager(client)
```

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/bare-metal-servers>

Parameters

- **client** (`SoftLayer.API.BaseClient`) – the client instance
- **ordering_manager** (`SoftLayer.managers.OrderingManager`) – an optional manager to handle ordering. If none is provided, one will be auto initialized.

authorize_storage(*hardware_id, username_storage*)

Authorize File or Block Storage to a Hardware Server.

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (*int*) – Hardware server id.
- **username_storage** (*string*) – Storage username.

Returns

bool.

cancel_hardware(*hardware_id, reason='unneeded', comment='', immediate=False*)

Cancels the specified dedicated server.

Example:

```
# Cancels hardware id 1234
result = mgr.cancel_hardware(hardware_id=1234)
```

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (*int*) – The ID of the hardware to be cancelled.
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason code for the cancellation. This should come from [get_cancellation_reasons\(\)](#).
- **comment** (*string*) – An optional comment to include with the cancellation.
- **immediate** (*bool*) – If set to True, will automatically update the cancelation ticket to request the resource be reclaimed asap. This request still has to be reviewed by a human

Returns

True on success or an exception

change_port_speed(*hardware_id, public, speed, redundant=None*)

Allows you to change the port speed of a server's NICs.

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (*int*) – The ID of the server
- **public** (*bool*) – Flag to indicate which interface to change. True (default) means the public interface. False indicates the private interface.
- **speed** (*int*) – The port speed to set.

Warning: A port speed of 0 will disable the interface.

Example:

```
#change the Public interface to 10Mbps on instance 12345
result = mgr.change_port_speed(hardware_id=12345,
                               public=True, speed=10)
# result will be True or an Exception
```

edit(*hardware_id, userdata=None, hostname=None, domain=None, notes=None, tags=None*)

Edit hostname, domain name, notes, user data of the hardware.

Parameters set to None will be ignored and not attempted to be updated.

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID to edit
- **userdata** (*string*) – user data on the hardware to edit. If none exist it will be created
- **hostname** (*string*) – valid hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – valid domain name
- **notes** (*string*) – notes about this particular hardware
- **tags** (*string*) – tags to set on the hardware as a comma separated list. Use the empty string to remove all tags.

Example:

```
# Change the hostname on instance 12345 to 'something'
result = mgr.edit(hardware_id=12345 , hostname="something")
#result will be True or an Exception
```

get_bandwidth_allocation(*instance_id*)

Combines getBandwidthAllotmentDetail() and getBillingCycleBandwidthUsage()

get_bandwidth_data(*instance_id*, *start_date=None*, *end_date=None*, *direction=None*, *rollup=3600*)

Gets bandwidth data for a server

Will get averaged bandwidth data for a given time period. If you use a rollup over 3600 be aware that the API will bump your start/end date to align with how data is stored. For example if you have a rollup of 86400 your start_date will be bumped to 00:00. If you are not using a time in the start/end date fields, this won't really matter.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Hardware Id to get data for
- **start_date** (*date*) – Date to start pulling data for.
- **end_date** (*date*) – Date to finish pulling data for
- **direction** (*string*) – Can be either 'public', 'private', or None for both.
- **rollup** (*int*) – 300, 600, 1800, 3600, 43200 or 86400 seconds to average data over.

get_cancellation_reasons()

Returns a dictionary of valid cancellation reasons.

These can be used when cancelling a dedicated server via [cancel_hardware\(\)](#).

get_components(*hardware_id*, *mask=None*, *filter_component=None*)

Get details about a hardware components.

Parameters

hardware_id (*int*) – the instance ID

Returns

A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified components.

get_create_options(*datacenter=None*)

Returns valid options for ordering hardware.

Parameters

datacenter (*string*) – short name, like dal09

get_hard_drives(*instance_id*)

Returns the hardware server hard drives.

Parameters

instance_id (*int*) – Id of the hardware server

get_hardware(*hardware_id*, ***kwargs*)

Get details about a hardware device.

Parameters

id (*integer*) – the hardware ID

Returns

A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified server.

Example:

```
object_mask = "mask[id,networkVlans[vlanNumber]]"
# Object masks are optional
result = mgr.get_hardware(hardware_id=1234,mask=object_mask)
```

get_hardware_item_prices(*location*)

Returns the hardware server item prices by location.

Parameters

location (*string*) – location to get the item prices.

get_instance(*instance_id*)

Get details about a hardware server instance.

Parameters

instance_id (*int*) – the instance ID

Returns

A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified instance.

get_maintenance_windows_detail(*location_id*)

Get the disks prices to be added or upgraded.

Parameters

location_id (*int*) – Hardware Server location id.

Return int**get_sensors**(*hardware_id*)

Returns Hardware sensor data

get_storage_credentials(*instance_id*)

Returns the hardware server storage credentials.

Parameters

instance_id (*int*) – Id of the hardware server

get_storage_details(*instance_id*, *nas_type*)

Returns the hardware server attached network storage.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Id of the hardware server
- **nas_type** – storage type.

get_tracking_id(*instance_id*)

Returns the Metric Tracking Object Id for a hardware server

Parameters

instance_id (*int*) – Id of the hardware server

list_hardware(*tags=None*, *cpus=None*, *memory=None*, *hostname=None*, *domain=None*, *datacenter=None*, *nic_speed=None*, *public_ip=None*, *private_ip=None*, ***kwargs*)

List all hardware (servers and bare metal computing instances).

param list tags

filter based on tags

param integer cpus

filter based on number of CPUS

param integer memory

filter based on amount of memory in gigabytes

param string hostname

filter based on hostname

param string domain

filter based on domain

param string datacenter

filter based on datacenter

param integer nic_speed

filter based on network speed (in MBPS)

param string public_ip

filter based on public ip address

param string private_ip

filter based on private ip address

param dict **kwargs

response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

returns

Returns a list of dictionaries representing the matching hardware. This list will contain both dedicated servers and bare metal computing instances

Example:

```
# Using a custom object-mask. Will get ONLY what is specified
# These will stem from the SoftLayer_Hardware_Server datatype
object_mask = "mask[hostname,monitoringRobot[robotStatus]]"
result = mgr.list_hardware(mask=object_mask)
```

place_order(kwargs)**

Places an order for a piece of hardware.

See `get_create_options()` for valid arguments.

Parameters

- **size** (*string*) – server size name or presetId
- **hostname** (*string*) – server hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – server domain name
- **location** (*string*) – location (datacenter) name
- **os** (*string*) – operating system name
- **port_speed** (*int*) – Port speed in Mbps
- **ssh_keys** (*list*) – list of ssh key ids
- **post_uri** (*string*) – The URI of the post-install script to run after reload
- **hourly** (*boolean*) – True if using hourly pricing (default). False for monthly.
- **no_public** (*boolean*) – True if this server should only have private interfaces
- **extras** (*list*) – List of extra feature names

reflash_firmware(hardware_id, ipmi=True, raid_controller=True, bios=True)

Reflash hardware firmware.

This will cause the server to be unavailable for ~60 minutes. The firmware will not be upgraded but rather reflashed to the version installed.

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (*int*) – The ID of the hardware to have its firmware reflashed.
- **ipmi** (*bool*) – Reflash the ipmi firmware.
- **raid_controller** (*bool*) – Reflash the raid controller firmware.
- **bios** (*bool*) – Reflash the bios firmware.

Example:

```
# Check the servers active transactions to see progress
result = mgr.reflash_firmware(hardware_id=1234)
```

reload(*hardware_id*, *post_uri=None*, *ssh_keys=None*, *lvm=False*)

Perform an OS reload of a server with its current configuration.

https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_Container_Hardware_Server_Configuration/
:param integer hardware_id: the instance ID to reload :param string post_uri: The URI of the post-install script to run after reload :param list ssh_keys: The SSH keys to add to the root user :param bool lvm: A flag indicating that the provision should use LVM for all logical drives.

rescue(*hardware_id*)

Reboot a server into the a rescue kernel.

Parameters

instance_id (*integer*) – the server ID to rescue

Example:

```
result = mgr.rescue(1234)
```

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

update_firmware(*hardware_id*, *ipmi=True*, *raid_controller=True*, *bios=True*, *hard_drive=True*)

Update hardware firmware.

This will cause the server to be unavailable for ~20 minutes.

Parameters

- **hardware_id** (*int*) – The ID of the hardware to have its firmware updated.
- **ipmi** (*bool*) – Update the ipmi firmware.
- **raid_controller** (*bool*) – Update the raid controller firmware.
- **bios** (*bool*) – Update the bios firmware.
- **hard_drive** (*bool*) – Update the hard drive firmware.

Example:

```
# Check the servers active transactions to see progress
result = mgr.update_firmware(hardware_id=1234)
```

upgrade(*instance_id*, *memory=None*, *nic_speed=None*, *drive_controller=None*, *public_bandwidth=None*, *disk=None*, *test=False*)

Upgrades a hardware server instance.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Instance id of the hardware server to be upgraded.
- **memory** (*int*) – Memory size.
- **nic_speed** (*string*) – Network Port Speed data.
- **drive_controller** (*string*) – Drive Controller data.
- **public_bandwidth** (*int*) – Public keyName data.
- **disk** (*list*) – List of disks to add or upgrade Hardware Server.
- **test** (*bool*) – Test option to verify the request.

Returns

bool

verify_order(***kwargs*)

Verifies an order for a piece of hardware.

See [place_order\(\)](#) for a list of available options.

wait_for_ready(*instance_id*, *limit=14400*, *delay=10*, *pending=False*)

Determine if a Server is ready.

A server is ready when no transactions are running on it.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – The instance ID with the pending transaction
- **limit** (*int*) – The maximum amount of seconds to wait.
- **delay** (*int*) – The number of seconds to sleep before checks. Defaults to 10.

SoftLayer.managers.hardware.find_item_in_package(*cost_key*, *items*, *location_group_id*, *price*)

Find the item in the packages item list.

Will return the item cost.

Parameters

- **cost_key** (*string*) – item cost key hourlyRecurringFee or recurringFee.
- **items** (*list*) – items list.
- **location_group_id** (*int*) – locationGroupId's to get price for.
- **price** – price data.

SoftLayer.managers.hardware.get_item_price(*prices*, *location_group_id=None*)

Get item prices, optionally for a specific location.

Will return the default pricing information if there isn't any location specific pricing.

Parameters

- **list** (*prices*) – SoftLayer_Product_Item_Price[]
- **int** (*location_group_id*) – locationGroupId's to get price for.

3.2.12 SoftLayer.image

Image Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager(*client*)

Manages SoftLayer server images.

See product information here: <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/image-templates>

Parameters

client (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_locations(*image_id*, *location_names*)

Add available locations to an archive image template.

Parameters

- **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image
- **location_names** – Locations for the Image.

delete_image(*image_id*)

Deletes the specified image.

Parameters

image_id (*int*) – The ID of the image.

edit(*image_id*, *name=None*, *note=None*, *tag=None*)

Edit image related details.

Parameters

- **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image
- **name** (*string*) – Name of the Image.
- **note** (*string*) – Note of the image.
- **tag** (*string*) – Tags of the image to be updated to.

export_image_to_uri(*image_id*, *uri*, *ibm_api_key=None*)

Export image into the given object storage

Parameters

- **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image
- **uri** (*string*) – The URI for object storage of the format `swift://<objectStorageAccount>@<cluster>/<container>/<objectPath>` or `cos://<regionName>/<bucketName>/<objectPath>` if using IBM Cloud Object Storage
- **ibm_api_key** (*string*) – Ibm Api Key needed to communicate with IBM Cloud Object Storage

get_image(*image_id*, ***kwargs*)

Get details about an image.

Parameters

- **image** (*int*) – The ID of the image.

- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

get_locations_list(*image_id, location_names*)

Converts a list of location names to a list of locations.

Parameters

- **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image.
- **location_names** (*list*) – A list of location names strings.

Returns

A list of locations associated with the given location names in the image.

get_storage_locations(*image_id*)

Get available locations for public image storage.

Parameters

image_id (*int*) – The ID of the image

import_image_from_uri(*name, uri, os_code=None, note=None, ibm_api_key=None, root_key_crn=None, wrapped_dek=None, cloud_init=False, byol=False, is_encrypted=False*)

Import a new image from object storage.

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – Name of the new image
- **uri** (*string*) – The URI for an object storage object (.vhd/.iso file) of the format: swift://<objectStorageAccount>@<cluster>/<container>/<objectPath> or (.vhd/.iso/.raw file) of the format: cos://<regionName>/<bucketName>/<objectPath> if using IBM Cloud Object Storage
- **os_code** (*string*) – The reference code of the operating system
- **note** (*string*) – Note to add to the image
- **ibm_api_key** (*string*) – Ibm Api Key needed to communicate with ICOS and your KMS
- **root_key_crn** (*string*) – CRN of the root key in your KMS. Go to your KMS (Key Protect or Hyper Protect) provider to get the CRN for your root key. An example CRN: crn:v1:bluemix:public:hs-crypto:us-south:acctID:serviceID:key:keyID' Used only when is_encrypted is True.
- **wrapped_dek** (*string*) – Wrapped Data Encryption Key provided by your KMS. Used only when is_encrypted is True.
- **cloud_init** (*boolean*) – Specifies if image is cloud-init
- **byol** (*boolean*) – Specifies if image is bring your own license
- **is_encrypted** (*boolean*) – Specifies if image is encrypted

list_private_images(*guid=None, name=None, **kwargs*)

List all private images.

Parameters

- **guid** (*string*) – filter based on GUID
- **name** (*string*) – filter based on name
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

list_public_images(*guid=None, name=None, **kwargs*)

List all public images.

Parameters

- **guid** (*string*) – filter based on GUID
- **name** (*string*) – filter based on name
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

remove_locations(*image_id, location_names*)

Remove available locations from an archive image template.

Parameters

- **image_id** (*int*) – The ID of the image
- **location_names** – Locations for the Image.

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

3.2.13 SoftLayer.ipsec

IPSec VPN Manager

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.**IPSECManager**(*client*)

Manage SoftLayer IPSEC VPN tunnel contexts.

This provides helpers to manage IPSEC contexts, private and remote subnets, and NAT translations.

Parameters

- **client** ([SoftLayer.API.BaseClient](#)) – the client instance
- **account** ([SoftLayer.API.BaseClient](#)) – account service client
- **context** ([SoftLayer.API.BaseClient](#)) – tunnel context client
- **customer_subnet** ([SoftLayer.API.BaseClient](#)) – remote subnet client

add_internal_subnet(*context_id, subnet_id*)

Add an internal subnet to a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the internal subnet.

Return bool

True if internal subnet addition was successful.

add_remote_subnet(*context_id*, *subnet_id*)

Adds a remote subnet to a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the remote subnet.

Return bool

True if remote subnet addition was successful.

add_service_subnet(*context_id*, *subnet_id*)

Adds a service subnet to a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the service subnet.

Return bool

True if service subnet addition was successful.

apply_configuration(*context_id*)

Requests network configuration for a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.

Return bool

True if the configuration request was successfully queued.

cancel_item(*identifier*, *immediate*, *reason*)

Cancels the specified billing item Ipsec.

Example:

```
# Cancels ipsec id 1234
result = mgr.cancel_item(billing_item_id=1234)
```

Parameters

- **billing_id** (*int*) – The ID of the billing item to be cancelled.
- **reason** (*string*) – The reason code for the cancellation. This should come from `get_cancellation_reasons()`.
- **immediate** (*bool*) – If set to True, will automatically update the cancelation ticket to request the resource be reclaimed asap. This request still has to be reviewed by a human

Returns

True on success or an exception

create_remote_subnet(*account_id*, *identifier*, *cidr*)

Creates a remote subnet on the given account.

Parameters

- **account_id** (*string*) – The account identifier.
- **identifier** (*string*) – The network identifier of the remote subnet.

- **cidr** (*string*) – The CIDR value of the remote subnet.

Return dict

Mapping of properties for the new remote subnet.

create_translation(*context_id, static_ip, remote_ip, notes*)

Creates an address translation on a tunnel context/

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **static_ip** (*string*) – The IP address value representing the internal side of the translation entry,
- **remote_ip** (*string*) – The IP address value representing the remote side of the translation entry,
- **notes** (*string*) – The notes to supply with the translation entry,

Return dict

Mapping of properties for the new translation entry.

delete_remote_subnet(*subnet_id*)

Deletes a remote subnet from the current account.

Parameters

subnet_id (*string*) – The id-value representing the remote subnet.

Return bool

True if subnet deletion was successful.

get_translation(*context_id, translation_id*)

Retrieves a translation entry for the given id values.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **translation_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the translation instance.

Return dict

Mapping of properties for the translation entry.

Raises

[*SoftLayerAPIError*](#) – If a translation cannot be found.

get_translations(*context_id*)

Retrieves all translation entries for a tunnel context.

Parameters

context_id (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.

Return list(dict)

Translations associated with the given context

get_tunnel_context(*context_id, **kwargs*)

Retrieves the network tunnel context instance.

Parameters

context_id (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.

Return dict

Mapping of properties for the tunnel context.

Raises

SoftLayerAPIError – If a context cannot be found.

get_tunnel_contexts(**kwargs)

Retrieves network tunnel module context instances.

Return list(dict)

Contexts associated with the current account.

order(datacenter, item_package)

Create a ipsec.

Parameters

- **datacenter** (*string*) – the datacenter shortname
- **item_package** (*string[]*) – items array

remove_internal_subnet(context_id, subnet_id)

Remove an internal subnet from a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the internal subnet.

Return bool

True if internal subnet removal was successful.

remove_remote_subnet(context_id, subnet_id)

Removes a remote subnet from a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the remote subnet.

Return bool

True if remote subnet removal was successful.

remove_service_subnet(context_id, subnet_id)

Removes a service subnet from a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the service subnet.

Return bool

True if service subnet removal was successful.

remove_translation(context_id, translation_id)

Removes a translation entry from a tunnel context.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **translation_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the translation.

Return bool

True if translation entry removal was successful.

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list**update_translation(*context_id*, *translation_id*, *static_ip*=None, *remote_ip*=None, *notes*=None)**

Updates an address translation entry using the given values.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*int*) – The id-value representing the context instance.
- **template** (*dict*) – A key-value mapping of translation properties.
- **static_ip** (*string*) – The static IP address value to update.
- **remote_ip** (*string*) – The remote IP address value to update.
- **notes** (*string*) – The notes value to update.

Return bool

True if the update was successful.

update_tunnel_context(*context_id*, *friendly_name*=None, *remote_peer*=None, *preshared_key*=None, *phase1_auth*=None, *phase1_crypto*=None, *phase1_dh*=None, *phase1_key_ttl*=None, *phase2_auth*=None, *phase2_crypto*=None, *phase2_dh*=None, *phase2_forward_secrecy*=None, *phase2_key_ttl*=None)

Updates a tunnel context using the given values.

Parameters

- **context_id** (*string*) – The id-value representing the context.
- **friendly_name** (*string*) – The friendly name value to update.
- **remote_peer** (*string*) – The remote peer IP address value to update.
- **preshared_key** (*string*) – The preshared key value to update.
- **phase1_auth** (*string*) – The phase 1 authentication value to update.
- **phase1_crypto** (*string*) – The phase 1 encryption value to update.
- **phase1_dh** (*string*) – The phase 1 diffie hellman group value to update.
- **phase1_key_ttl** (*string*) – The phase 1 key life value to update.
- **phase2_auth** (*string*) – The phase 2 authentication value to update.
- **phase2_crypto** (*string*) – The phase 2 encryption value to update.
- **phase2_df** (*string*) – The phase 2 diffie hellman group value to update.
- **phase2_forward_secriecy** (*string*) – The phase 2 perfect forward secrecy value to update.
- **phase2_key_ttl** (*string*) – The phase 2 key life value to update.

Return bool

True if the update was successful.

3.2.14 SoftLayer.load_balancer

Load Balancer Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager(*client*)

Manages SoftLayer load balancers.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/load-balancer>

Parameters

client (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_lb_l7_pool(*identifier, pool, members, health, session*)

Creates a new l7 pool for a LBaaS instance

- https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_L7Pool/createL7Pool/
- <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/infrastructure/loadbalancer-service?topic=loadbalancer-service-api-reference>

Parameters

- **identifier** – UUID of the LBaaS instance
- **SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_L7Pool** (*pool*) – Description of the pool
- **SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_L7Member**[] (*members*) – Array of servers with their address, port, weight
- **SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_L7HealthMonitor** (*monitor*) – A health monitor
- **SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_L7SessionAffinity** (*session*) – Whether to use affinity

add_lb_listener(*identifier, listener*)

Adds or update a listener to a LBaaS instance

When using this to update a listener, just include the ‘listenerUuid’ in the listener object See the following for listener configuration options https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancerProtocolConfiguration/

Parameters

- **identifier** – UUID of the LBaaS instance
- **listener** – Object with all listener configurations

add_lb_member(*identifier, service_info*)

Adds a member to a LBaaS instance

https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_Member/deleteLoadBalancerMembers/ :param identifier: UUID of the LBaaS instance :param service_info: datatypes/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancerServerInstanceInfo

cancel_lbaas(*uuid*)

Cancels a LBaaS instance.

https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancer/cancelLoadBalancer/ :param uuid string: UUID of the LBaaS instance to cancel

del_lb_l7_pool(*identifier*)

Deletes a l7 pool

Parameters

identifier – Id of the L7Pool

delete_lb_member(*identifier, member_id*)

Removes a member from a LBaaS instance

https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_Member/deleteLoadBalancerMembers/ :param identifier: UUID of the LBaaS instance :param member_id: Member UUID to remove.

get_adc(*identifier, mask=None*)

Returns a netscaler object.

Returns

SoftLayer_Network_Application_Delivery_Controller.

get_adcs(*mask=None*)

Returns a list of all netscalers.

Returns

SoftLayer_Network_Application_Delivery_Controller[].

get_all_l7policies()

Gets all Layer7 policies

Returns

Dictionary of (protocol_id: policies list).

get_l7policies(*identifier*)

Gets Layer7 policies from a listener

Parameters

identifier – id

get_lb(*identifier, mask=None*)

Returns a IBM Cloud LoadBalancer

Returns

SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancer

get_lbaas(*mask=None*)

Returns a list of IBM Cloud Loadbalancers

Returns

SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancer[]

get_lbaas_by_name(*name, mask=None*)

Gets a LBaaS by name.

Parameters

- **name** – Name of the LBaaS instance
- **mask** –

Returns

SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancer.

get_lbaas_uuid_id(*identifier*)

Gets a LBaaS uuid, id. Since sometimes you need one or the other.

Parameters

identifier – either the LB Id, UUID or Name, this function will return UI and LB Id.

Return (uuid, id)

lbaas_order_options()

Gets the options to order a LBaaS instance.

order_lbaas(*datacenter, name, desc, protocols, subnet_id, public=False, verify=False*)

Allows to order a Load Balancer

Parameters

- **datacenter** – Shortname for the SoftLayer datacenter to order in.
- **name** – Identifier for the new LB.
- **desc** – Optional description for the lb.
- **protocols** – https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_Listener/
- **subnet_id** – Id of the subnet for this new LB to live on.
- **public** – Use Public side for the backend.
- **verify** – Don't actually order if True.

remove_lb_listener(*identifier, listener*)

Removes a listener to a LBaaS instance

Parameters

- **identifier** – UUID of the LBaaS instance
- **listener** – UUID of the Listener to be removed.

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

update_lb_health_monitors(*uuid, checks*)

calls SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_HealthMonitor::updateLoadBalancerHealthMonitors()

- [updateLoadBalancerHealthMonitors](#)
- [SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancerHealthMonitorConfiguration](#)

Parameters

- **uuid** – loadBalancerUuid
- **list (*checks*)** – SoftLayer_Network_LBaaS_LoadBalancerHealthMonitorConfiguration[]

3.2.15 SoftLayer.metadata

Metadata Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.metadata.**MetadataManager**(*client=None, timeout=5*)

Provides an interface for the SoftLayer metadata service.

See product information here: http://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Resource_Metadata

This provides metadata about the resource it is called from. See *METADATA_ATTRIBUTES* for full list of attributes.

Usage:

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
>>> from SoftLayer import MetadataManager
>>> meta = MetadataManager(client)
>>> meta.get('datacenter')
'dal05'
>>> meta.get('fqdn')
'test.example.com'
```

Parameters

client (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

get(*name, param=None*)

Retrieve a metadata attribute.

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – name of the attribute to retrieve. See *attrs*
- **param** – Required parameter for some attributes

private_network(***kwargs*)

Returns details about the private network.

Parameters

- **router** (*boolean*) – True to return router details
- **vlan** (*boolean*) – True to return vlan details
- **vlan_ids** (*boolean*) – True to return vlan_ids

public_network(***kwargs*)

Returns details about the public network.

Parameters

- **router** (*boolean*) – True to return router details
- **vlan** (*boolean*) – True to return vlan details
- **vlan_ids** (*boolean*) – True to return vlan_ids

```
metadata.METADATA_ATTRIBUTES = dict_keys(['backend_mac', 'datacenter', 'datacenter_id',
'domain', 'frontend_mac', 'fqdn', 'hostname', 'id', 'primary_backend_ip', 'primary_ip',
'primary_frontend_ip', 'provision_state', 'router', 'tags', 'user_data', 'user_metadata',
'vlan_ids', 'vlans'])
```

3.2.16 SoftLayer.network

Network Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.network.**NetworkManager**(*client*)

Manage SoftLayer network objects: VLANs, subnets and IPs

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/network>

Parameters

client (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_global_ip(*version=4, test_order=False*)

Adds a global IP address to the account.

Parameters

- **version** (*int*) – Specifies whether this is IPv4 or IPv6
- **test_order** (*bool*) – If true, this will only verify the order.

add_securitygroup_rule(*group_id, remote_ip=None, remote_group=None, direction=None, ethertype=None, port_max=None, port_min=None, protocol=None*)

Add a rule to a security group

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group to add this rule to
- **remote_ip** (*str*) – The remote IP or CIDR to enforce the rule on
- **remote_group** (*int*) – The remote security group ID to enforce the rule on
- **direction** (*str*) – The direction to enforce (egress or ingress)
- **ethertype** (*str*) – The ethertype to enforce (IPv4 or IPv6)
- **port_max** (*int*) – The upper port bound to enforce (icmp code if the protocol is icmp)
- **port_min** (*int*) – The lower port bound to enforce (icmp type if the protocol is icmp)
- **protocol** (*str*) – The protocol to enforce (icmp, udp, tcp)

add_securitygroup_rules(*group_id, rules*)

Add rules to a security group

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group to add the rules to
- **rules** (*list*) – The list of rule dictionaries to add

add_subnet(*subnet_type*, *quantity=None*, *endpoint_id=None*, *version=4*, *test_order=False*)

Orders a new subnet

Parameters

- **subnet_type** (*str*) – Type of subnet to add: private, public, global,static
- **quantity** (*int*) – Number of IPs in the subnet
- **endpoint_id** (*int*) – id for the subnet to be placed into
- **version** (*int*) – 4 for IPv4, 6 for IPv6
- **test_order** (*bool*) – If true, this will only verify the order.

assign_global_ip(*global_ip_id*, *target*)

Assigns a global IP address to a specified target.

Parameters

- **global_ip_id** (*int*) – The ID of the global IP being assigned
- **target** (*string*) – The IP address to assign

attach_securitygroup_component(*group_id*, *component_id*)

Attaches a network component to a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **component_id** (*int*) – The ID of the network component to attach

attach_securitygroup_components(*group_id*, *component_ids*)

Attaches network components to a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **component_ids** (*list*) – The IDs of the network components to attach

cancel_global_ip(*global_ip_id*)

Cancels the specified global IP address.

Parameters

- **id** (*int*) – The ID of the global IP to be cancelled.

cancel_item(*identifier*, *cancel_immediately*, *reason_cancel*, *customer_note*)

Cancel a billing item immediately, deleting all its data.

Parameters

- **identifier** (*integer*) – the instance ID to cancel
- **reason_cancel** (*string*) – reason cancel

cancel_subnet(*subnet_id*)

Cancels the specified subnet.

Parameters

- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The ID of the subnet to be cancelled.

clear_route(*identifier*)

Calls SoftLayer_Network_Subnet::clearRoute()

returns true or false.

create_securitygroup(*name=None, description=None*)

Creates a security group.

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – The name of the security group
- **description** (*string*) – The description of the security group

delete_securitygroup(*group_id*)

Deletes the specified security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group

detach_securitygroup_component(*group_id, component_id*)

Detaches a network component from a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **component_id** (*int*) – The ID of the component to detach

detach_securitygroup_components(*group_id, component_ids*)

Detaches network components from a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **component_ids** (*list*) – The IDs of the network components to detach

edit(*instance_id, name=None, note=None, tags=None*)

Edit a vlan.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID to edit.
- **name** (*string*) – valid name.
- **note** (*string*) – note about this particular vlan.
- **tags** (*string*) – tags to set on the vlan as a comma separated list. Use the empty string to remove all tags.

Returns

bool – True or an Exception

edit_note_subnet(*subnet_id, note*)

Edit the note for this subnet.

Parameters

- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The ID of the subnet.
- **note** (*string*) – The note.

edit_securitygroup(*group_id*, *name=None*, *description=None*)

Edit security group details.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **name** (*string*) – The name of the security group
- **description** (*string*) – The description of the security group

edit_securitygroup_rule(*group_id*, *rule_id*, *remote_ip=None*, *remote_group=None*, *direction=None*, *ethertype=None*, *port_max=None*, *port_min=None*, *protocol=None*)

Edit a security group rule.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group the rule belongs to
- **rule_id** (*int*) – The ID of the rule to edit
- **remote_ip** (*str*) – The remote IP or CIDR to enforce the rule on
- **remote_group** (*int*) – The remote security group ID to enforce the rule on
- **direction** (*str*) – The direction to enforce (egress or ingress)
- **ethertype** (*str*) – The ethertype to enforce (IPv4 or IPv6)
- **port_max** (*str*) – The upper port bound to enforce
- **port_min** (*str*) – The lower port bound to enforce
- **protocol** (*str*) – The protocol to enforce (icmp, udp, tcp)

get_cancel_failure_reasons(*identifier*)

get the reasons why we cannot cancel the VLAN.

Parameters

identifier (*integer*) – the instance ID

get_closed_pods()

Calls SoftLayer_Network_Pod::getAllObjects()

returns list of all closing network pods.

get_datacenter(*_filter=None*, *datacenter=None*)

Calls SoftLayer_Location::getDatacenters()

returns datacenter list.

get_datacenter_by_keyname(*keyname=None*)

Calls SoftLayer_Location::getDatacenters()

returns datacenter list.

get_event_logs_by_request_id(*request_id*)

Gets all event logs by the given request id

Parameters

request_id (*string*) – The request id we want to filter on

get_ip_by_address(*ip_address*)

get the ip address object

Parameters

ip_address (*string*) – the ip address to edit.

get_list_datacenter()

Calls SoftLayer_Location::getDatacenters()

returns all datacenter locations.

get_nas_credentials(*identifier*, ***kwargs*)

Returns a list of IDs of VLANs which match the given VLAN name.

Parameters

instance_id (*integer*) – the instance ID

Returns

A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified instance.

get_pods(*datacenter=None*, *mask=None*)

Calls SoftLayer_Network_Pod::getAllObjects()

returns list of all network pods and their routers.

get_routers(*identifier*)

Calls SoftLayer_Location::getRouters()

returns all routers locations.

get_securitygroup(*group_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns the information about the given security group.

Parameters

id (*string*) – The ID for the security group

Returns

A diction of information about the security group

get_subnet(*subnet_id*, ***kwargs*)

Returns information about a single subnet.

Parameters

id (*string*) – Either the ID for the subnet or its network identifier

Returns

A dictionary of information about the subnet

static get_subnet_item_price(*item*, *subnet_type*, *version*)

Get the subnet specific item price id.

Parameters

- **version** – 4 for IPv4, 6 for IPv6.
- **subnet_type** – Type of subnet to add: private, public, global,static.
- **item** – Subnet item.

get_vlan(*vlan_id*, *mask=None*)

Returns information about a single VLAN.

Parameters

- **vlan_id** (*int*) – The unique identifier for the VLAN
- **mask** (*string*) – mask for request

Returns

A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified VLAN.

ip_lookup(*ip_address*)

Looks up an IP address and returns network information about it.

Parameters

ip_address (*string*) – An IP address. Can be IPv4 or IPv6

Returns

A dictionary of information about the IP

list_global_ips(*version=None, identifier=None, **kwargs*)

Returns a list of all global IP address records on the account.

Parameters

- **version** (*int*) – Only returns IPs of this version (4 or 6)
- **identifier** (*string*) – If specified, the list will only contain the global ips matching this network identifier.

list_securitygroup_rules(*group_id*)

List security group rules associated with a security group.

Parameters

group_id (*int*) – The security group to list rules for

list_securitygroups(***kwargs*)

List security groups.

list_subnets(*identifier=None, datacenter=None, version=0, subnet_type=None, network_space=None, **kwargs*)

Display a list of all subnets on the account.

This provides a quick overview of all subnets including information about data center residence and the number of devices attached.

Parameters

- **identifier** (*string*) – If specified, the list will only contain the subnet matching this network identifier.
- **datacenter** (*string*) – If specified, the list will only contain subnets in the specified data center.
- **version** (*int*) – Only returns subnets of this version (4 or 6).
- **subnet_type** (*string*) – If specified, it will only returns subnets of this type.
- **network_space** (*string*) – If specified, it will only returns subnets with the given address space label.
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

list_vlans(*datacenter=None, vlan_number=None, name=None, limit=100, **kwargs*)

Display a list of all VLANs on the account.

This provides a quick overview of all VLANs including information about data center residence and the number of devices attached.

Parameters

- **datacenter** (*string*) – If specified, the list will only contain VLANs in the specified data center.
- **vlan_number** (*int*) – If specified, the list will only contain the VLAN matching this VLAN number.
- **name** (*int*) – If specified, the list will only contain the VLAN matching this VLAN name.
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

remove_securitygroup_rule(*group_id, rule_id*)

Remove a rule from a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **rule_id** (*int*) – The ID of the rule to remove

remove_securitygroup_rules(*group_id, rules*)

Remove rules from a security group.

Parameters

- **group_id** (*int*) – The ID of the security group
- **rules** (*list*) – The list of IDs to remove

resolve_global_ip_ids(*identifier*)

Resolve global ip ids.

resolve_subnet_ids(*identifier*)

Resolve subnet ids.

resolve_vlan_ids(*identifier*)

Resolve VLAN ids.

route(*subnet_id, type_serv, target*)

Assigns a subnet to a specified target.

Parameters

- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The ID of the global IP being assigned
- **type_serv** (*string*) – The type service to assign
- **target** (*string*) – The instance to assign

set_subnet_ipaddress_note(*identifier, note*)

Set the ip address note of the subnet

Parameters**identifier** (*integer*) – the ip address ID to edit. :param json note: the note to edit.**set_tags**(*tags, vlan_id*)

Sets tags on a vlan with a retry decorator

Just calls vlan.setTags, but if it fails from an APIError will retry.

set_tags_subnet(*subnet_id*, *tags*)

Tag a subnet by passing in one or more tags separated by a comma.

Parameters

- **subnet_id** (*int*) – The ID of the subnet.
- **tags** (*string*) – Comma separated list of tags.

summary_by_datacenter()

Summary of the networks on the account, grouped by data center.

The resultant dictionary is primarily useful for statistical purposes. It contains count information rather than raw data. If you want raw information, see the [list_vlans\(\)](#) method instead.

Returns

A dictionary keyed by data center with the data containing a set of counts for subnets, hardware, virtual servers, and other objects residing within that data center.

unassign_global_ip(*global_ip_id*)

Unassigns a global IP address from a target.

Parameters

- **id** (*int*) – The ID of the global IP being unassigned

3.2.17 SoftLayer.ordering

Ordering Manager

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.ordering.**OrderingManager**(*client*)

Manager to help ordering via the SoftLayer API.

Parameters

- **client** ([SoftLayer.API.BaseClient](#)) – the client instance

static filter_outlet_packages(*packages*)

Remove packages designated as OUTLET.

Those type of packages must be handled in a different way, and they are not supported at the moment.

Parameters

- **packages** – Dictionary of packages. Name and description keys must be present in each of them.

generate_order(*package_keyname*, *location*, *item_keynames*, *complex_type=None*, *hourly=True*, *preset_keyname=None*, *extras=None*, *quantity=1*)

Generates an order with the given package and prices.

This function takes in parameters needed for an order and generates an order dictionary. This dictionary can then be used in either `verify` or `placeOrder()`.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*str*) – The keyname for the package being ordered
- **location** (*str*) – The datacenter location string for ordering (Ex: DALLAS13)
- **item_keynames** (*list*) – The list of item keyname strings to order. To see list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_items()` (or *slcli order item-list*)

- **complex_type** (*str*) – The complex type to send with the order. Typically begins with *SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_*.
- **hourly** (*bool*) – If true, uses hourly billing, otherwise uses monthly billing
- **preset_keyname** (*string*) – If needed, specifies a preset to use for that package. To see a list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_preset()` (or *slcli order preset-list*)
- **extras** (*dict*) – The extra data for the order in dictionary format. Example: A VSI order requires hostname and domain to be set, so extras will look like the following: `{'virtualGuests': [{'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'softlayer.com'}]}`
- **quantity** (*int*) – The number of resources to order

generate_order_template(*quote_id, extra, quantity=1*)

Generate a complete order template.

Parameters

- **quote_id** (*int*) – ID of target quote
- **extra** (*dictionary*) – Overrides for the defaults of *SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order*
- **quantity** (*int*) – Number of items to order.

get_item_capacity(*items, item_keynames*)

Get item capacity.

static get_item_price_id(*core, prices, term=0*)

get item price id

core: None or a number to match against `capacityRestrictionType` prices: list of *SoftLayer_Product_Item_Price* term: int to match against *SoftLayer_Product_Item_Price.termLength*

get_item_prices(*package_id*)

Get item prices.

Retrieve a *SoftLayer_Product_Package* item prices record.

Parameters

- **package_id** (*int*) – package identifier.

Returns

A list of price IDs associated with the given package.

get_item_prices_by_location(*location, package_keyname*)

Returns the item prices by location.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*string*) – The package for which to get the items.
- **location** (*string*) – location name or keyname to get the item prices.

get_items(*package_id, storage_filter=None*)

“Returns the items .

Parameters

- **package_id** (*int*) – The package for which to get the items.
- **storage_filter** (*dict*) – object filter.

get_location_id(*location*)

Finds the location ID of a given datacenter

This is mostly used so either a dc name, or regions keyname can be used when ordering :param str location: Region Keyname (DALLAS13) or datacenter name (dal13) :returns: integer id of the datacenter

static get_only_active_packages(*packages*)

Return only active packages.

If a package is active, it is eligible for ordering This will inspect the 'isActive' property on the provided packages

Parameters

packages – Dictionary of packages, isActive key must be present

get_order_container(*quote_id*)

Generate an order container from a quote object.

Parameters

quote_id – ID number of target quote

get_order_detail(*order_id*, *mask=None*)

Get order details.

Parameters

- **order_id** (*int*) – to specify the order that we want to retrieve.
- **mask** (*string*) – Mask to specify the properties we want to retrieve.

get_package_by_key(*package_keyname*, *mask=None*)

Get a single package with a given key.

If no packages are found, returns None

Parameters

- **package_keyname** – string representing the package key name we are interested in.
- **mask** (*string*) – Mask to specify the properties we want to retrieve

get_package_by_type(*package_type*, *mask=None*)

Get a single package of a given type.

Syntactic sugar to retrieve a single package of a given type. If multiple packages share the given type, this will return the first one returned by the API. If no packages are found, returns None

Parameters

package_type (*string*) – representing the package type key name we are interested in

get_package_id_by_type(*package_type*)

Return the package ID of a Product Package with a given type.

Parameters

package_type (*string*) – representing the package type key name we are interested in

Raises

ValueError – when no package of the given type is found

get_packages_of_type(*package_types*, *mask=None*)

Get packages that match a certain type.

Each ordering package has a type, so return all packages that match the types we are looking for

Parameters

- **package_types** (*list*) – List of strings representing the package type keynames we are interested in.
- **mask** (*string*) – Mask to specify the properties we want to retrieve

get_preset_by_key(*package_keyname*, *preset_keyname*, *mask=None*)

Gets a single preset with the given key.

get_preset_prices(*preset*)

Get preset item prices.

Retrieve a SoftLayer_Product_Package_Preset record.

Parameters

preset (*int*) – preset identifier.

Returns

A list of price IDs associated with the given preset_id.

get_price_id_list(*package_keyname*, *item_keynames*, *core=None*)

Converts a list of item keynames to a list of price IDs.

This function is used to convert a list of item keynames into a list of price IDs that are used in the Product_Order verifyOrder() and placeOrder() functions.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*str*) – The package associated with the prices
- **item_keynames** (*list*) – A list of item keyname strings
- **core** (*str*) – preset guest core capacity.

Returns

A list of price IDs associated with the given item keynames in the given package

get_quote_details(*quote_id*)

Retrieve quote details.

Parameters

quote_id – ID number of target quote

get_quotes()

Retrieve a list of active quotes.

Returns

a list of SoftLayer_Billing_Order_Quote

get_regions(*package_id*, *location=None*)

returns the all regions.

Parameters

package_id (*int*) – The package for which to get the items.

list_categories(*package_keyname*, ***kwargs*)

List the categories for the given package.

Parameters

package_keyname (*str*) – The package for which to get the categories.

Returns

List of categories associated with the package

list_items(*package_keyname*, ***kwargs*)

List the items for the given package.

Parameters

package_keyname (*str*) – The package for which to get the items.

Returns

List of items in the package

list_packages(***kwargs*)

List active packages.

Returns

List of active packages.

list_presets(*package_keyname*, ***kwargs*)

Gets active presets for the given package.

Parameters

package_keyname (*str*) – The package for which to get presets

Returns

A list of package presets that can be used for ordering

order_quote(*quote_id*, *extra*)

Places an order using a quote

```
extras = {
    'hardware': {'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'testing.com'},
    'quantity': 2
}
manager = ordering.OrderingManager(env.client)
result = manager.order_quote(12345, extras)
```

Parameters

- **quote_id** (*int*) – ID for the target quote
- **extra** (*dictionary*) – Overrides for the defaults of SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order
- **quantity** (*int*) – Quantity to override default

package_locations(*package_keyname*)

List datacenter locations for a package keyname

Parameters

package_keyname (*str*) – The package for which to get the items.

Returns

List of locations a package is orderable in

place_order(*package_keyname*, *location*, *item_keynames*, *complex_type=None*, *hourly=True*, *preset_keyname=None*, *extras=None*, *quantity=1*)

Places an order with the given package and prices.

This function takes in parameters needed for an order and places the order.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*str*) – The keyname for the package being ordered

- **location** (*str*) – The datacenter location string for ordering (Ex: DALLAS13)
- **item_keynames** (*list*) – The list of item keyname strings to order. To see list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_items()` (or *slcli order item-list*)
- **complex_type** (*str*) – The complex type to send with the order. Typically begins with *SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_*.
- **hourly** (*bool*) – If true, uses hourly billing, otherwise uses monthly billing
- **preset_keyname** (*string*) – If needed, specifies a preset to use for that package. To see a list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_preset()` (or *slcli order preset-list*)
- **extras** (*dict*) – The extra data for the order in dictionary format. Example: A VSI order requires hostname and domain to be set, so extras will look like the following: `{'virtualGuests': [{'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'softlayer.com'}]}`
- **quantity** (*int*) – The number of resources to order

place_quote(*package_keyname, location, item_keynames, complex_type=None, preset_keyname=None, extras=None, quantity=1, quote_name=None, send_email=False*)

Place a quote with the given package and prices.

This function takes in parameters needed for an order and places the quote.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*str*) – The keyname for the package being ordered
- **location** (*str*) – The datacenter location string for ordering (Ex: DALLAS13)
- **item_keynames** (*list*) – The list of item keyname strings to order. To see list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_items()` (or *slcli order item-list*)
- **complex_type** (*str*) – The complex type to send with the order. Typically begins with *SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_*.
- **preset_keyname** (*string*) – If needed, specifies a preset to use for that package. To see a list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_preset()` (or *slcli order preset-list*)
- **extras** (*dict*) – The extra data for the order in dictionary format. Example: A VSI order requires hostname and domain to be set, so extras will look like the following: `{'virtualGuests': [{'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'softlayer.com'}]}`
- **quantity** (*int*) – The number of resources to order
- **quote_name** (*string*) – A custom name to be assigned to the quote (optional).
- **send_email** (*bool*) – This flag indicates that the quote should be sent to the email address associated with the account or order.

resolve_location_name(*location_key*)

Resolves a location name using a string location key.

Parameters

location_key (*string*) – A string location used to resolve the location name.

Returns

An location name.

save_quote(*quote_id*)

Save a quote.

Parameters

quote_id – ID number of target quote

verify_order(*package_keyname*, *location*, *item_keynames*, *complex_type=None*, *hourly=True*, *preset_keyname=None*, *extras=None*, *quantity=1*)

Verifies an order with the given package and prices.

This function takes in parameters needed for an order and verifies the order to ensure the given items are compatible with the given package.

Parameters

- **package_keyname** (*str*) – The keyname for the package being ordered
- **location** (*str*) – The datacenter location string for ordering (Ex: DALLAS13)
- **item_keynames** (*list*) – The list of item keyname strings to order. To see list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_items()` (or *slcli order item-list*)
- **complex_type** (*str*) – The complex type to send with the order. Typically begins with *SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_*.
- **hourly** (*bool*) – If true, uses hourly billing, otherwise uses monthly billing
- **preset_keyname** (*string*) – If needed, specifies a preset to use for that package. To see a list of possible keynames for a package, use `list_preset()` (or *slcli order preset-list*)
- **extras** (*dict*) – The extra data for the order in dictionary format. Example: A VSI order requires hostname and domain to be set, so extras will look like the following: `'virtualGuests': [{'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'softlayer.com'}]}`
- **quantity** (*int*) – The number of resources to order

verify_quote(*quote_id*, *extra*)

Verifies that a quote order is valid.

```
extras = {
    'hardware': {'hostname': 'test', 'domain': 'testing.com'},
    'quantity': 2
}
manager = ordering.OrderingManager(env.client)
result = manager.verify_quote(12345, extras)
```

Parameters

- **quote_id** (*int*) – ID for the target quote
- **extra** (*dictionary*) – Overrides for the defaults of *SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order*
- **quantity** (*int*) – Quantity to override default

3.2.18 SoftLayer.sshkey

SSH Key Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class `SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager`(*client*)

Manages account SSH keys in SoftLayer.

See product information here: <https://knowledgelayer.softlayer.com/procedure/ssh-keys>

Parameters

client (`SoftLayer.API.BaseClient`) – the client instance

add_key(*key*, *label*, *notes=None*)

Adds a new SSH key to the account.

Parameters

- **key** (*string*) – The SSH key to add
- **label** (*string*) – The label for the key
- **notes** (*string*) – Additional notes for the key

Returns

A dictionary of the new key's information.

delete_key(*key_id*)

Permanently deletes an SSH key from the account.

Parameters

key_id (*int*) – The ID of the key to delete

edit_key(*key_id*, *label=None*, *notes=None*)

Edits information about an SSH key.

Parameters

- **key_id** (*int*) – The ID of the key to edit
- **label** (*string*) – The new label for the key
- **notes** (*string*) – Notes to set or change on the key

Returns

A Boolean indicating success or failure

get_key(*key_id*)

Returns full information about a single SSH key.

Parameters

key_id (*int*) – The ID of the key to retrieve

Returns

A dictionary of information about the key

list_keys(*label=None*)

Lists all SSH keys on the account.

Parameters

label (*string*) – Filter list based on SSH key label

Returns

A list of dictionaries with information about each key

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

3.2.19 SoftLayer.ssl

SSL Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.ssl.**SSLManager**(client)

Manages SSL certificates in SoftLayer.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/ssl-certificates>

Example:

```
# Initialize the Manager.
# env variables. These can also be specified in ~/.softlayer,
# or passed directly to SoftLayer.Client()
# SL_USERNAME = YOUR_USERNAME
# SL_API_KEY = YOUR_API_KEY
import SoftLayer
client = SoftLayer.Client()
mgr = SoftLayer.SSLManager(client)
```

Parameters

client (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance

add_certificate(certificate)

Creates a new certificate.

Parameters

certificate (dict) – A dictionary representing the parts of the certificate. See sldn.softlayer.com for more info.

Example:

```
cert = ??
result = mgr.add_certificate(certificate=cert)
```

edit_certificate(certificate)

Updates a certificate with the included options.

The provided dict must include an 'id' key and value corresponding to the certificate ID that should be updated.

Parameters

certificate (dict) – the certificate to update.

Example:

```
# Updates the cert id 1234
cert['id'] = 1234
cert['certificate'] = ??
result = mgr.edit_certificate(certificate=cert)
```

get_certificate(cert_id)

Gets a certificate with the ID specified.

Parameters**cert_id** (*integer*) – the certificate ID to retrieve

Example:

```
cert = mgr.get_certificate(cert_id=1234)
print(cert)
```

list_certs(*method='all'*)

List all certificates.

Parameters**method** (*string*) – The type of certificates to list. Options are 'all', 'expired', and 'valid'.**Returns**

A list of dictionaries representing the requested SSL certs.

Example:

```
# Get all valid SSL certs
certs = mgr.list_certs(method='valid')
print(certs)
```

remove_certificate(*cert_id*)

Removes a certificate.

Parameters**cert_id** (*integer*) – a certificate ID to remove

Example:

```
# Removes certificate with id 1234
result = mgr.remove_certificate(cert_id = 1234)
```

3.2.20 SoftLayer.ticket

Ticket Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.ticket.**TicketManager**(*client*)

Manages SoftLayer support tickets.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/support>**Parameters****client** (*SoftLayer.API.BaseClient*) – the client instance**attach_hardware**(*ticket_id=None, hardware_id=None*)

Attach hardware to a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** (*integer*) – the id of the ticket to attach to
- **hardware_id** (*integer*) – the id of the hardware to attach

Returns

dict – The new ticket attachment

attach_virtual_server(*ticket_id=None, virtual_id=None*)

Attach a virtual server to a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** (*integer*) – the id of the ticket to attach to
- **virtual_id** (*integer*) – the id of the virtual server to attach

Returns

dict – The new ticket attachment

create_ticket(*title=None, body=None, subject=None, priority=None*)

Create a new ticket.

Parameters

- **title** (*string*) – title for the new ticket
- **body** (*string*) – body for the new ticket
- **subject** (*integer*) – id of the subject to be assigned to the ticket
- **priority** (*integer*) – Value from 1 (highest) to 4 (lowest)

detach_hardware(*ticket_id=None, hardware_id=None*)

Detach hardware from a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** – the id of the ticket to detach from
- **hardware_id** – the id of the hardware to detach

Returns

bool – Whether the detachment was successful

detach_virtual_server(*ticket_id=None, virtual_id=None*)

Detach a virtual server from a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** – the id of the ticket to detach from
- **virtual_id** – the id of the virtual server to detach

Returns

bool – Whether the detachment was successful

get_ticket(*ticket_id*)

Get details about a ticket.

Parameters

ticket_id (*integer*) – the ticket ID

Returns

dict – information about the specified ticket

list_subjects()

List all ticket subjects.

list_tickets(*open_status=True, closed_status=True*)

List all tickets.

Parameters

- **open_status** (*boolean*) – include open tickets
- **closed_status** (*boolean*) – include closed tickets

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

update_ticket(*ticket_id=None, body=None*)

Update a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** (*integer*) – the id of the ticket to update
- **body** (*string*) – entry to update in the ticket

upload_attachment(*ticket_id=None, file_path=None, file_name=None*)

Upload an attachment to a ticket.

Parameters

- **ticket_id** (*integer*) – the id of the ticket to upload the attachment to
- **file_path** (*string*) – The path of the attachment to be uploaded
- **file_name** (*string*) – The name of the attachment shown in the ticket

Returns

dict – The uploaded attachment

3.2.21 SoftLayer.vs

VS Manager/helpers

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.vs.**VSManger**(*client, ordering_manager=None*)

Manages SoftLayer Virtual Servers.

See product information here: <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/virtual-servers>

Example:

```
# Initialize the VSManger.
# env variables. These can also be specified in ~/.softlayer,
# or passed directly to SoftLayer.Client()
# SL_USERNAME = YOUR_USERNAME
# SL_API_KEY = YOUR_API_KEY
import SoftLayer
client = SoftLayer.Client()
mgr = SoftLayer.VSManger(client)
```

Parameters

- **client** (`SoftLayer.API.BaseClient`) – the client instance
- **ordering_manager** (`SoftLayer.managers.OrderingManager`) – an optional manager to handle ordering. If none is provided, one will be auto initialized.

attach_portable_storage(*vs_id, portable_id*)

Attach portal storage to a Virtual Server.

Parameters

- **vs_id** (*int*) – Virtual server id.
- **portable_id** (*int*) – Portal storage id.

Returns

SoftLayer_Provisioning_Version1_Transaction.

authorize_storage(*vs_id, username_storage*)

Authorize File or Block Storage to a Virtual Server.

Parameters

- **vs_id** (*int*) – Virtual server id.
- **username_storage** (*string*) – Storage username.

Returns

bool.

browser_access_log(*identifier*)

A virtual guest's browser access logs.

Parameters

identifier (*int*) – Virtual server id.

Returns

SoftLayer_Virtual_BrowserConsoleAccessLog.

cancel_instance(*instance_id*)

Cancel an instance immediately, deleting all its data.

Parameters

instance_id (*integer*) – the instance ID to cancel

Example:

```
# Cancels instance 12345
mgr.cancel_instance(12345)
```

capture(*instance_id, name, additional_disks=False, notes=None*)

Capture one or all disks from a VS to a SoftLayer image.

Parameters set to None will be ignored and not attempted to be updated.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID to edit
- **name** (*string*) – name assigned to the image
- **additional_disks** (*bool*) – set to true to include all additional attached storage devices
- **notes** (*string*) – notes about this particular image

Returns

dictionary – information about the capture transaction.

Example::

```
name = "Testing Images" notes = "Some notes about this image" result = mgr.capture(instance_id=12345, name=name, notes=notes)
```

change_port_speed(instance_id, public, speed)

Allows you to change the port speed of a virtual server's NICs.

Example:

```
#change the Public interface to 10Mbps on instance 12345
result = mgr.change_port_speed(instance_id=12345,
                                public=True, speed=10)
# result will be True or an Exception
```

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – The ID of the VS
- **public** (*bool*) – Flag to indicate which interface to change. True (default) means the public interface. False indicates the private interface.
- **speed** (*int*) – The port speed to set.

Warning: A port speed of 0 will disable the interface.

create_instance(kwargs)**

Creates a new virtual server instance.

Warning: This will add charges to your account

Example:

```
new_vsi = {
    'domain': u'test01.labs.sftlyr.ws',
    'hostname': u'minion05',
    'datacenter': u'hkg02',
    'flavor': 'BL1_1X2X100'
    'dedicated': False,
    'private': False,
    'os_code' : u'UBUNTU_LATEST',
    'hourly': True,
    'ssh_keys': [1234],
    'disks': ('100', '25'),
    'local_disk': True,
    'tags': 'test, pleaseCancel',
    'public_security_groups': [12, 15]
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
vsi = mgr.create_instance(**new_vsi)
# vsi will have the newly created vsi details if done properly.
print vsi
```

Parameters

- **cpus** (*int*) – The number of virtual CPUs to include in the instance.
- **memory** (*int*) – The amount of RAM to order.
- **hourly** (*bool*) – Flag to indicate if this server should be billed hourly (default) or monthly.
- **hostname** (*string*) – The hostname to use for the new server.
- **domain** (*string*) – The domain to use for the new server.
- **local_disk** (*bool*) – Flag to indicate if this should be a local disk (default) or a SAN disk.
- **datacenter** (*string*) – The short name of the data center in which the VS should reside.
- **os_code** (*string*) – The operating system to use. Cannot be specified if image_id is specified.
- **image_id** (*int*) – The GUID of the image to load onto the server. Cannot be specified if os_code is specified.
- **dedicated** (*bool*) – Flag to indicate if this should be housed on adedicated or shared host (default). This will incur a fee on your account.
- **public_vlan** (*int*) – The ID of the public VLAN on which you want this VS placed.
- **public_security_groups** (*list*) – The list of security group IDs to apply to the public interface
- **private_security_groups** (*list*) – The list of security group IDs to apply to the private interface
- **private_vlan** (*int*) – The ID of the private VLAN on which you want this VS placed.
- **disks** (*list*) – A list of disk capacities for this server.
- **post_uri** (*string*) – The URI of the post-install script to run after reload
- **private** (*bool*) – If true, the VS will be provisioned only with access to the private network. Defaults to false
- **ssh_keys** (*list*) – The SSH keys to add to the root user
- **nic_speed** (*int*) – The port speed to set
- **tags** (*string*) – tags to set on the VS as a comma separated list
- **flavor** (*string*) – The key name of the public virtual server flavor being ordered.
- **host_id** (*int*) – The host id of a dedicated host to provision a dedicated host virtual server on.

create_instances(*config_list*)

Creates multiple virtual server instances.

This takes a list of dictionaries using the same arguments as create_instance().

Warning: This will add charges to your account

Example:

```
# Define the instance we want to create.
new_vsi = {
    'domain': u'test01.labs.sftlyr.ws',
    'hostname': u'minion05',
    'datacenter': u'hkg02',
    'flavor': 'BL1_1X2X100'
    'dedicated': False,
    'private': False,
    'os_code' : u'UBUNTU_LATEST',
    'hourly': True,
    'ssh_keys': [1234],
    'disks': ('100', '25'),
    'local_disk': True,
    'tags': 'test, pleaseCancel',
    'public_security_groups': [12, 15]
}

# using .copy() so we can make changes to individual nodes
instances = [new_vsi.copy(), new_vsi.copy(), new_vsi.copy()]

# give each its own hostname, not required.
instances[0]['hostname'] = "multi-test01"
instances[1]['hostname'] = "multi-test02"
instances[2]['hostname'] = "multi-test03"

vsi = mgr.create_instances(config_list=instances)
#vsi will be a dictionary of all the new virtual servers
print vsi
```

edit(instance_id, userdata=None, hostname=None, domain=None, notes=None, tags=None)

Edit hostname, domain name, notes, and/or the user data of a VS.

Parameters set to None will be ignored and not attempted to be updated.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID to edit
- **userdata** (*string*) – user data on VS to edit. If none exist it will be created
- **hostname** (*string*) – valid hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – valid domain name
- **notes** (*string*) – notes about this particular VS
- **tags** (*string*) – tags to set on the VS as a comma separated list. Use the empty string to remove all tags.

Returns

bool – True or an Exception

Example::

```
# Change the hostname on instance 12345 to 'something' result = mgr.edit(instance_id=12345 , host-
name="something") #result will be True or an Exception
```

get_bandwidth_allocation(instance_id)

Combines getBandwidthAllotmentDetail() and getBillingCycleBandwidthUsage()

get_bandwidth_data(instance_id, start_date=None, end_date=None, direction=None, rollup=3600)

Gets bandwidth data for a server

Will get averaged bandwidth data for a given time period. If you use a rollup over 3600 be aware that the API will bump your start/end date to align with how data is stored. For example if you have a rollup of 86400 your start_date will be bumped to 00:00. If you are not using a time in the start/end date fields, this won't really matter.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Hardware Id to get data for
- **start_date** (*date*) – Date to start pulling data for.
- **end_date** (*date*) – Date to finish pulling data for
- **direction** (*string*) – Can be either 'public', 'private', or None for both.
- **rollup** (*int*) – 300, 600, 1800, 3600, 43200 or 86400 seconds to average data over.

get_create_options(vsi_type='PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER', datacenter=None)

Retrieves the available options for creating a VS.

Parameters

- **vsi_type** (*string*) – vs keyName.
- **datacenter** (*string*) – short name, like dal09

Returns

A dictionary of creation options.

Example:

```
# Prints out the create option dictionary
options = mgr.get_create_options()
print(options)
```

get_hardware_guests()

Returns all virtualHost capable hardware objects and their guests.

:return SoftLayer_Hardware[].

get_instance(instance_id, **kwargs)

Get details about a virtual server instance.

Parameters

instance_id (*integer*) – the instance ID

Returns

A dictionary containing a large amount of information about the specified instance.

Example:

```
# Print out instance ID 12345.
vsi = mgr.get_instance(12345)
print vsi

# Print out only FQDN and primaryIP for instance 12345
object_mask = "mask[fullyQualifiedDomainName,primaryIpAddress]"
vsi = mgr.get_instance(12345, mask=mask)
print vsi
```

get_local_disks(*instance_id*)

Returns the virtual server local disks.

Parameters

instance_id (*int*) – Id of the virtual server

get_portable_storage(*instance_id*)

Returns the virtual server portable storage.

Parameters

instance_id (*int*) – Id of the virtual server

get_storage_credentials(*instance_id*)

Returns the virtual server storage credentials.

Parameters

instance_id (*int*) – Id of the virtual server

get_storage_details(*instance_id*, *nas_type*)

Returns the virtual server attached network storage.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Id of the virtual server
- **nas_type** – storage type.

get_summary_data_usage(*instance_id*, *start_date*=None, *end_date*=None, *valid_type*=None, *summary_period*=None)

Retrieve the usage information of a virtual server.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*string*) – a string identifier used to resolve ids
- **start_date** (*string*) – the start data to retrieve the vs usage information
- **end_date** (*string*) – the start data to retrieve the vs usage information
- **valid_type** (*string string*) – the Metric_Data_Type keyName.
- **summary_period** (*int*) – summary period.

get_tracking_id(*instance_id*)

Returns the Metric Tracking Object Id for a hardware server

Parameters

instance_id (*int*) – Id of the hardware server

list_instances(*hourly*=True, *monthly*=True, *tags*=None, *cpus*=None, *memory*=None, *hostname*=None, *domain*=None, *local_disk*=None, *datacenter*=None, *nic_speed*=None, *public_ip*=None, *private_ip*=None, *transient*=None, ***kwargs*)

Retrieve a list of all virtual servers on the account.

Example:

```
# Print out a list of hourly instances in the DAL05 data center.

for vsi in mgr.list_instances(hourly=True, datacenter='dal05'):
    print vsi['fullyQualifiedDomainName'], vsi['primaryIpAddress']

# Using a custom object-mask. Will get ONLY what is specified
object_mask = "mask[hostname,monitoringRobot[robotStatus]]"
for vsi in mgr.list_instances(mask=object_mask, hourly=True):
    print vsi
```

Parameters

- **hourly** (*boolean*) – include hourly instances
- **monthly** (*boolean*) – include monthly instances
- **tags** (*list*) – filter based on list of tags
- **cpus** (*integer*) – filter based on number of CPUS
- **memory** (*integer*) – filter based on amount of memory
- **hostname** (*string*) – filter based on hostname
- **domain** (*string*) – filter based on domain
- **local_disk** (*string*) – filter based on local_disk
- **datacenter** (*string*) – filter based on datacenter
- **nic_speed** (*integer*) – filter based on network speed (in MBPS)
- **public_ip** (*string*) – filter based on public ip address
- **private_ip** (*string*) – filter based on private ip address
- **transient** (*boolean*) – filter on transient or non-transient instances
- ****kwargs** (*dict*) – response-level options (mask, limit, etc.)

Returns

Returns a list of dictionaries representing the matching virtual servers

migrate(*instance_id*)

Calls SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::migrate

Only actually does anything if the virtual server requires a migration. Will return an exception otherwise.

Parameters

instance_id (*int*) – Id of the virtual server

migrate_dedicated(*instance_id*, *host_id*)

Calls SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::migrate

Only actually does anything if the virtual server requires a migration. Will return an exception otherwise.

Parameters

instance_id (*int*) – Id of the virtual server

order_guest(*guest_object*, *test=False*)

Uses Product_Order::placeOrder to create a virtual guest.

Useful when creating a virtual guest with options not supported by Virtual_Guest::createObject specifically ipv6 support.

Parameters

guest_object (*dictionary*) – See SoftLayer.CLI.virt.create._parse_create_args

Example:

```
new_vsi = {
    'domain': u'test01.labs.sftlyr.ws',
    'hostname': u'minion05',
    'datacenter': u'hkg02',
    'flavor': 'BL1_1X2X100'
    'dedicated': False,
    'private': False,
    'transient': False,
    'os_code' : u'UBUNTU_LATEST',
    'hourly': True,
    'ssh_keys': [1234],
    'disks': ('100', '25'),
    'local_disk': True,
    'tags': 'test, pleaseCancel',
    'public_security_groups': [12, 15],
    'ipv6': True
}

vsi = mgr.order_guest(new_vsi)
# vsi will have the newly created vsi receipt.
# vsi['orderDetails']['virtualGuests'] will be an array of created Guests
print vsi
```

reload_instance(*instance_id*, *post_uri=None*, *ssh_keys=None*, *image_id=None*)

Perform an OS reload of an instance.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*integer*) – the instance ID to reload
- **post_url** (*string*) – The URI of the post-install script to run after reload
- **ssh_keys** (*list*) – The SSH keys to add to the root user
- **image_id** (*int*) – The GUID of the image to load onto the server

Warning: This will reformat the primary drive. Post-provision script MUST be HTTPS for it to be executed.

Example:

```
# Reload instance ID 12345 then run a custom post-provision script.
# Post-provision script MUST be HTTPS for it to be executed.
post_uri = 'https://somehost.com/bootstrap.sh'
vsi = mgr.reload_instance(12345, post_uri=post_url)
```


rescue(*instance_id*)

Reboot a VSI into the Xen rescue kernel.

Parameters

instance_id (*integer*) – the instance ID to rescue

Returns

bool – True or an Exception

Example::

```
# Puts instance 12345 into rescue mode result = mgr.rescue(instance_id=12345)
```

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list**set_tags**(*tags*, *guest_id*)

Sets tags on a guest with a retry decorator

Just calls guest.setTags, but if it fails from an APIError will retry

upgrade(*instance_id*, *cpus=None*, *memory=None*, *nic_speed=None*, *public=True*, *preset=None*, *disk=None*)

Upgrades a VS instance.

Example:

```
# Upgrade instance 12345 to 4 CPUs and 4 GB of memory
import SoftLayer
client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
mgr = SoftLayer.VSManager(client)
mgr.upgrade(12345, cpus=4, memory=4)
```

Parameters

- **instance_id** (*int*) – Instance id of the VS to be upgraded
- **cpus** (*int*) – The number of virtual CPUs to upgrade to of a VS instance.
- **preset** (*string*) – preset assigned to the vsi
- **memory** (*int*) – RAM of the VS to be upgraded to.
- **nic_speed** (*int*) – The port speed to set
- **public** (*bool*) – CPU will be in Private/Public Node.

Returns

bool

verify_create_instance(***kwargs*)

Verifies an instance creation command.

Without actually placing an order. See [create_instance\(\)](#) for a list of available options.

Example:

```
new_vsi = {
    'domain': u'test01.labs.sftlyr.ws',
    'hostname': u'minion05',
    'datacenter': u'hkg02',
    'flavor': 'BL1_1X2X100'
    'dedicated': False,
    'private': False,
    'transient': False,
    'os_code' : u'UBUNTU_LATEST',
    'hourly': True,
    'ssh_keys': [1234],
    'disks': ('100', '25'),
    'local_disk': True,
    'tags': 'test, pleaseCancel',
    'public_security_groups': [12, 15]
}

vsi = mgr.verify_create_instance(**new_vsi)
# vsi will be a SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Virtual_Guest
# if your order is correct. Otherwise you will get an exception
print vsi
```

wait_for_ready(instance_id, limit=3600, delay=10, pending=False)

Determine if a VS is ready and available.

In some cases though, that can mean that no transactions are running. The default arguments imply a VS is operational and ready for use by having network connectivity and remote access is available. Setting `pending=True` will ensure future API calls against this instance will not error due to pending transactions such as OS Reloads and cancellations.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (int) – The instance ID with the pending transaction
- **limit** (int) – The maximum amount of seconds to wait.
- **delay** (int) – The number of seconds to sleep before checks. Defaults to 10.
- **pending** (bool) – Wait for pending transactions not related to provisioning or reloads such as monitoring.

Example:

```
# Will return once vsi 12345 is ready, or after 10 checks
ready = mgr.wait_for_ready(12345, 10)
```

wait_for_transaction(instance_id, limit, delay=10)

Waits on a VS transaction for the specified amount of time.

This is really just a wrapper for `wait_for_ready(pending=True)`. Provided for backwards compatibility.

Parameters

- **instance_id** (int) – The instance ID with the pending transaction
- **limit** (int) – The maximum amount of time to wait.
- **delay** (int) – The number of seconds to sleep before checks. Defaults to 10.

3.2.22 SoftLayer.vs_capacity

Reserved Capacity Manager and helpers

license

MIT, see License for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager(*client, ordering_manager=None*)

Manages SoftLayer Reserved Capacity Groups.

Product Information

- <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/virtual-servers?topic=virtual-servers-about-reserved-virtual-servers>
- https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Virtual_ReservedCapacityGroup/
- https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Virtual_ReservedCapacityGroup_Instance/

Parameters

- **client** (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient) – the client instance
- **ordering_manager** (SoftLayer.managers.OrderingManager) – an optional manager to handle ordering. If none is provided, one will be auto initialized.

create(*name, backend_router_id, flavor, instances, test=False*)

Orders a Virtual_ReservedCapacityGroup

Parameters

- **name** (*string*) – Name for the new reserved capacity
- **backend_router_id** (*int*) – This selects the pod. See create_options for a list
- **flavor** (*string*) – Capacity KeyName, see create_options for a list
- **instances** (*int*) – Number of guest this capacity can support
- **test** (*bool*) – If True, don't actually order, just test.

create_guest(*capacity_id, test, guest_object*)

Turns an empty Reserve Capacity into a real Virtual Guest

Parameters

- **capacity_id** (*int*) – ID of the RESERVED_CAPACITY_GROUP to create this guest into
- **test** (*bool*) – True will use verifyOrder, False will use placeOrder
- **guest_object** (*dictionary*) – Below is the minimum info you need to send in guest_object = { 'domain': 'test.com', 'hostname': 'A1538172419', 'os_code': 'UBUNTU_LATEST_64', 'primary_disk': '25', }

get_available_routers(*dc=None*)

Pulls down all backendRouterIds that are available

Parameters

dc (*string*) – A specific location to get routers for, like 'dal13'.

Returns list

A list of locations where RESERVED_CAPACITY can be ordered.

get_create_options()

List available reserved capacity plans

get_object(identifier, mask=None)

Get a Reserved Capacity Group

Parameters

- **identifier** (*int*) – Id of the SoftLayer_Virtual_ReservedCapacityGroup
- **mask** (*string*) – override default object Mask

list()

List Reserved Capacities

resolve_ids(identifier)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

3.2.23 SoftLayer.vs_placement

Placement Group Manager

license

MIT, see License for more details.

class SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager(client)

Manages SoftLayer Reserved Capacity Groups.

Product Information

- https://console.test.cloud.ibm.com/docs/vsi/vsi_placegroup.html#placement-groups
- https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Account/getPlacementGroups/
- https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup_Rule/

Existing instances cannot be added to a placement group. You can only add a virtual server instance to a placement group at provisioning. To remove an instance from a placement group, you must delete or reclaim the instance.

Parameters

client ([SoftLayer.API.BaseClient](#)) – the client instance

create(placement_object)

Creates a placement group

A placement_object is defined as:

```
placement_object = {
    'backendRouterId': 12345,
    'name': 'Test Name',
    'ruleId': 12345
}
```

- https://softlayer.github.io/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup/

Parameters

placement_object (*dictionary*) –

delete(*group_id*)

Deletes a PlacementGroup

Placement group must be empty to be deleted. https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup/deleteObject

get_all_rules()

Returns all available rules for creating a placement group

get_backend_router_id_from_hostname(*hostname*)

Finds the backend router Id that matches the hostname given

No way to use an objectFilter to find a backendRouter, so we have to search the hard way.

get_object(*group_id*, *mask=None*)

Returns a PlacementGroup Object

https://softlayer.github.io/reference/services/SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup/getObject

get_routers()

Calls SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup::getAvailableRouters()

get_rule_id_from_name(*name*)

Finds the rule that matches name.

SoftLayer_Virtual_PlacementGroup_Rule.getAllObjects doesn't support objectFilters.

list(*mask=None*)

List existing placement groups

Calls SoftLayer_Account::getPlacementGroups

resolve_ids(*identifier*)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

If you need more power or functionality than the managers provide, you can make direct API calls as well.

3.3 Making API Calls

For full control over your account and services, you can directly call the SoftLayer API. The SoftLayer API client for python leverages SoftLayer's XML-RPC API. It supports authentication, object masks, object filters, limits, offsets, and retrieving objects by id. The following section assumes you have an initialized client named 'client'.

The best way to test our setup is to call the `getObject` method on the `SoftLayer_Account` service.

```
client.call('Account', 'getObject')
```

For a more complex example we'll retrieve a support ticket with id 123456 along with the ticket's updates, the user it's assigned to, the servers attached to it, and the datacenter those servers are in. To retrieve our extra information using an [object mask](#).

Retrieve a ticket using object masks.

```
ticket = client.call('Ticket', 'getObject',
    id=123456, mask="updates, assignedUser, attachedHardware.datacenter")
```

Now add an update to the ticket with `Ticket.addUpdate`. This uses a parameter, which translate to positional arguments in the order that they appear in the API docs.

```
update = client.call('Ticket', 'addUpdate', {'entry' : 'Hello!'}, id=123456)
```

Let's get a listing of virtual guests using the domain example.com

```
client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests',
    filter={'virtualGuests': {'domain': {'operation': 'example.com'}}})
```

This call gets tickets created between the beginning of March 1, 2013 and March 15, 2013. More information on [Object Filters](#).

NOTE

The *value* field for startDate and endDate is in [], if you do not put the date in brackets the filter will not work.

```
client.call('Account', 'getTickets',
    filter={
        'tickets': {
            'createDate': {
                'operation': 'betweenDate',
                'options': [
                    {'name': 'startDate', 'value': ['03/01/2013 0:0:0']},
                    {'name': 'endDate', 'value': ['03/15/2013 23:59:59']}
                ]
            }
        }
    }
)
```

SoftLayer's XML-RPC API also allows for pagination.

```
from pprint import pprint

page1 = client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', limit=10, offset=0) # Page 1
page2 = client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', limit=10, offset=10) # Page 2

#Automatic Pagination (v5.5.3+), default limit is 100
result = client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', iter=True, limit=10)
pprint(result)

# Using a python generator, default limit is 100
results = client.iter_call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', limit=10)
for result in results:
    pprint(result)
```

NOTE

client.call(iter=True) will pull all results, then return. *client.iter_call()* will return a generator, and only make API calls as you iterate over the results.

Here's how to create a new Cloud Compute Instance using `SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest.createObject`. Be warned, this call actually creates an hourly virtual server so this will have billing implications.

```
client.call('Virtual_Guest', 'createObject', {
    'hostname': 'myhostname',
    'domain': 'example.com',
    'startCpus': 1,
    'maxMemory': 1024,
    'hourlyBillingFlag': 'true',
    'operatingSystemReferenceCode': 'UBUNTU_LATEST',
    'localDiskFlag': 'false'
})
```

3.4 Debugging

If you ever need to figure out what exact API call the client is making, you can do the following:

NOTE the *print_reproduceable* method produces different output for REST and XML-RPC endpoints. If you are using REST, this will produce a CURL call. If you are using XML-RPC, it will produce some pure python code you can use outside of the SoftLayer library.

```
# Setup the client as usual
client = SoftLayer.Client()
# Create an instance of the DebugTransport, which logs API calls
debugger = SoftLayer.DebugTransport(client.transport)
# Set that as the default client transport
client.transport = debugger
# Make your API call
client.call('Account', 'getObject')

# Print out the reproduceable call
for call in client.transport.get_last_calls():
    print(client.transport.print_reproduceable(call))
```

3.5 Dealing with KeyError Exceptions

One of the pain points in dealing with the SoftLayer API can be handling issues where you expected a property to be returned, but none was.

The `hostname` property of a `SoftLayer_Billing_Item` is a good example of this.

For example.

```
# Uses default username and apikey from ~/.softlayer
client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
# iter_call returns a python generator, and only makes another API call when the loop
↳ runs out of items.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

result = client.iter_call('Account', 'getAllBillingItems', iter=True, mask="mask[id,
↪hostname]")
print("Id, hostname")
for item in result:
    # will throw a KeyError: 'hostName' exception on certain billing items that do not
    ↪have a hostName
    print("{} {}".format(item['id'], item['hostName']))

```

3.5.1 The Solution

Using the python dictionary's `.get()` is great for non-nested items.

```
print("{} {}".format(item.get('id'), item.get('hostName')))
```

Otherwise, this SDK provides a util function to do something similar. Each additional argument passed into `utils.lookup` will go one level deeper into the nested dictionary to find the item requested, returning `None` if a `KeyError` shows up.

```

itemId = SoftLayer.utils.lookup(item, 'id')
itemHostname = SoftLayer.utils.lookup(item, 'hostName')
print("{} {}".format(itemId, itemHostname))

```

3.6 API Reference

3.6.1 SoftLayer Python API Client

SoftLayer API bindings

Usage:

```

>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env(username="username",
                                              api_key="api_key")
>>> resp = client.call('Account', 'getObject')
>>> resp['companyName']
'Your Company'

```

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

3.6.2 SoftLayer.API

SoftLayer API bindings

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class `SoftLayer.API.BaseClient`(*auth=None, transport=None, config_file=None*)

Base SoftLayer API client.

Parameters

- **auth** – auth driver that looks like `SoftLayer.auth.AuthenticationBase`
- **transport** – An object that's callable with this signature: `transport(SoftLayer.transports.Request)`

authenticate_with_password(*username, password, security_question_id=None, security_question_answer=None*)

Performs Username/Password Authentication

Parameters

- **username** (*string*) – your SoftLayer username
- **password** (*string*) – your SoftLayer password
- **security_question_id** (*int*) – The security question id to answer
- **security_question_answer** (*string*) – The answer to the security question

call(*service, method, *args, **kwargs*)

Make a SoftLayer API call.

Parameters

- **method** – the method to call on the service
- ***args** – (optional) arguments for the remote call
- **id** – (optional) id for the resource
- **mask** – (optional) object mask
- **filter** (*dict*) – (optional) filter dict
- **headers** (*dict*) – (optional) optional XML-RPC headers
- **compress** (*boolean*) – (optional) Enable/Disable HTTP compression
- **raw_headers** (*dict*) – (optional) HTTP transport headers
- **limit** (*int*) – (optional) return at most this many results
- **offset** (*int*) – (optional) offset results by this many
- **iter** (*boolean*) – (optional) if True, returns a generator with the results
- **verify** (*bool*) – verify SSL cert
- **cert** – client certificate path

Usage:

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
>>> client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', mask="id", limit=10)
[...]
```

iter_call(*service, method, *args, **kwargs*)

A generator that deals with paginating through results.

Parameters

- **service** – the name of the SoftLayer API service
- **method** – the method to call on the service

- **limit** (*integer*) – result size for each API call (defaults to 100)
- ***args** – same optional arguments that `Service.call` takes
- ****kwargs** – same optional keyword arguments that `Service.call` takes

`SoftLayer.API.Client(**kwargs)`

Get a SoftLayer API Client using environmental settings.

Deprecated in favor of `create_client_from_env()`

class `SoftLayer.API.IAMClient(auth=None, transport=None, config_file=None)`

IBM ID Client for using IAM authentication

Parameters

- **auth** – auth driver that looks like `SoftLayer.auth.AuthenticationBase`
- **transport** – An object that's callable with this signature: `transport(SoftLayer.transports.Request)`

authenticate_with_iam_token(*a_token*, *r_token=None*)

Authenticates to the SL API with an IAM Token

Parameters

- **a_token** (*string*) – Access token
- **r_token** (*string*) – Refresh Token, to be used if Access token is expired.

authenticate_with_passcode(*passcode*)

Performs IBM IAM SSO Authentication

Parameters

passcode (*string*) – your IBMid password

authenticate_with_password(*username*, *password*, *security_question_id=None*,
security_question_answer=None)

Performs IBM IAM Username/Password Authentication

Parameters

- **username** (*string*) – your IBMid username
- **password** (*string*) – your IBMid password

call(*service*, *method*, **args*, ***kwargs*)

Handles refreshing IAM tokens in case of a HTTP 401 error

refresh_iam_token(*r_token*, *account_id=None*, *ims_account=None*)

Refreshes the IAM Token, will default to values in the config file

class `SoftLayer.API.Service(client, name)`

A SoftLayer Service.

Parameters

- **client** – A `SoftLayer.API.Client` instance
- **str** (*name*) – The service name

call(*name*, **args*, ***kwargs*)

Make a SoftLayer API call

Parameters

- **service** – the name of the SoftLayer API service
- **method** – the method to call on the service
- ***args** – same optional arguments that `BaseClient.call` takes
- ****kwargs** – same optional keyword arguments that `BaseClient.call` takes
- **service** – the name of the SoftLayer API service

Usage:

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
>>> client['Account'].getVirtualGuests(mask="id", limit=10)
[...]
```

iter_call(*name*, **args*, ***kwargs*)

A generator that deals with paginating through results.

Parameters

- **method** – the method to call on the service
- **chunk** (*integer*) – result size for each API call
- ***args** – same optional arguments that `Service.call` takes
- ****kwargs** – same optional keyword arguments that `Service.call` takes

Usage:

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
>>> gen = client.call('Account', 'getVirtualGuests', iter=True)
>>> for virtual_guest in gen:
...     virtual_guest['id']
...
1234
4321
```

```
SoftLayer.API.create_client_from_env(username=None, api_key=None, endpoint_url=None,
                                     timeout=None, auth=None, config_file=None, proxy=None,
                                     user_agent=None, transport=None, verify=True)
```

Creates a SoftLayer API client using your environment.

Settings are loaded via keyword arguments, environemtal variables and config file.

Parameters

- **username** – an optional API username if you wish to bypass the package’s built-in username
- **api_key** – an optional API key if you wish to bypass the package’s built in API key
- **endpoint_url** – the API endpoint base URL you wish to connect to. Set this to `API_PRIVATE_ENDPOINT` to connect via SoftLayer’s private network.

- **proxy** – proxy to be used to make API calls
- **timeout** (*integer*) – timeout for API requests
- **auth** – an object which responds to `get_headers()` to be inserted into the xml-rpc headers.
Example: *BasicAuthentication*
- **config_file** – A path to a configuration file used to load settings
- **user_agent** – an optional User Agent to report when making API calls if you wish to bypass the packages built in User Agent string
- **transport** – An object that's callable with this signature: `transport(SoftLayer.transports.Request)`
- **verify** (*bool*) – decide to verify the server's SSL/TLS cert. DO NOT SET TO FALSE WITHOUT UNDERSTANDING THE IMPLICATIONS.

Usage:

```
>>> import SoftLayer
>>> client = SoftLayer.create_client_from_env()
>>> resp = client.call('Account', 'getObject')
>>> resp['companyName']
'Your Company'
```

3.6.3 SoftLayer.exceptions

Exceptions used throughout the library

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.ApplicationError(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

Application Error.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.IAMError(fault_code, fault_string, url=None)`

Errors from iam.cloud.ibm.com

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.InternalError(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

Internal Server Error.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.InvalidCharacter(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

There was an invalid character.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.InvalidMethodParameters(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

Invalid method paramters.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.MethodNotFound(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

Method name not found.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.NotWellFormed(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

Request was not well formed.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.ParseError(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

Parse Error.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.RemoteSystemError(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

System Error.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.ServerError(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

Server Error.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.SoftLayerAPIError(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

SoftLayerAPIError is an exception raised during API errors.

Provides faultCode and faultString properties.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.SoftLayerError`

The base SoftLayer error.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.SpecViolation(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

There was a spec violation.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.TransportError(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

Transport Error.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.Unauthenticated`

Unauthenticated.

exception `SoftLayer.exceptions.UnsupportedEncoding(fault_code, fault_string, *args)`

Encoding not supported.

3.6.4 SoftLayer.decoration

Handy decorators to use

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

`SoftLayer.decoration.retry(ex=(<class 'SoftLayer.exceptions.ServerError'>, <class 'SoftLayer.exceptions.ApplicationError'>, <class 'SoftLayer.exceptions.RemoteSystemError'>), tries=4, delay=5, backoff=2, logger=None)`

Retry calling the decorated function using an exponential backoff.

<http://www.saltycrane.com/blog/2009/11/trying-out-retry-decorator-python/> original from: <http://wiki.python.org/moin/PythonDecoratorLibrary#Retry>

Parameters

- **ex** – the exception to check. may be a tuple of exceptions to check
- **tries** – number of times to try (not retry) before giving up
- **delay** – initial delay between retries in seconds. A random 0-5s will be added to this number to stagger calls.
- **backoff** – backoff multiplier e.g. value of 2 will double the delay each retry
- **logger** – logger to use. If None, print

3.6.5 SoftLayer.utils

Utility function/classes.

license

MIT, see LICENSE for more details.

class SoftLayer.utils.IdentifierMixin

Mixin used to resolve ids from other names of objects.

This mixin provides an interface to provide multiple methods for converting an 'identifier' to an id

resolve_ids(identifier)

Takes a string and tries to resolve to a list of matching ids.

What exactly 'identifier' can be depends on the resolvers

Parameters

identifier (*string*) – identifying string

Returns list

class SoftLayer.utils.NestedDict

This helps with accessing a heavily nested dictionary.

Dictionary where accessing keys that don't exist will return another NestedDict object.

to_dict()

Converts a NestedDict instance into a real dictionary.

This is needed for places where strict type checking is done.

class SoftLayer.utils.UTC

UTC timezone.

dst(_)

datetime -> DST offset as timedelta positive east of UTC.

tzname(_)

datetime -> string name of time zone.

utcoffset(_)

datetime -> timedelta showing offset from UTC, negative values indicating West of UTC

SoftLayer.utils.build_filter_orderby(orderby)

Builds filters using the filter options passed into the CLI.

It only supports the orderBy option, the default value is DESC.

SoftLayer.utils.clean_dict(dictionary)

Removes any *None* entires from the dictionary

SoftLayer.utils.clean_splitlines(string)

Returns a string where is replaced with

SoftLayer.utils.clean_string(string)

Returns a string with all newline and other whitespace garbage removed.

Mostly this method is used to print out objectMasks that have a lot of extra whitespace in them because making compact masks in python means they don't look nice in the IDE.

Parameters

string – The string to clean.

Returns string

A string without extra whitespace.

`SoftLayer.utils.clean_time(slttime, in_format='%Y-%m-%dT%H:%M:%S%z', out_format='%Y-%m-%d %H:%M')`

Easy way to format time strings

Parameters

- **slttime** (*string*) – A softlayer formatted time string
- **in_format** (*string*) – Datetime format for strptime
- **out_format** (*string*) – Datetime format for strftime

`SoftLayer.utils.days_to_datetime(days)`

Returns the datetime value of last N days.

Parameters

days (*int*) – From 0 to N days

Returns int

The datetime of last N days or datetime.now() if days <= 0.

`SoftLayer.utils.decode_stacked(document, pos=0, decoder=<json.decoder.JSONDecoder object>)`

Used for converting CLI output to JSON datastructures. Specially for unit tests

<https://stackoverflow.com/questions/27907633/how-to-extract-multiple-json-objects-from-one-file>

Example:

```
split_output = []
# Converts Rich JSON output to actual JSON data. JSON UTIL
for table in utils.decode_stacked(result.output):
    split_output.append(table)
```

`SoftLayer.utils.dict_merge(dct1, dct2)`

Recursively merges dct2 and dct1, ideal for merging objectFilter together.

Parameters

- **dct1** – A dictionary
- **dct2** – A dictionary

Returns

dct1 + dct2

`SoftLayer.utils.event_log_filter_between_date(start, end, utc)`

betweenDate Query filter that SoftLayer_EventLog likes

Parameters

- **start** (*string*) – lower bound date in mm/dd/yyyy format
- **end** (*string*) – upper bound date in mm/dd/yyyy format
- **utc** (*string*) – utc offset. Defaults to '+0000'

`SoftLayer.utils.event_log_filter_greater_than_date(date, utc)`

greaterThanDate Query filter that SoftLayer_EventLog likes

Parameters

- **date** (*string*) – lower bound date in mm/dd/yyyy format
- **utc** (*string*) – utc offset. Defaults to '+0000'

`SoftLayer.utils.event_log_filter_less_than_date(date, utc)`

lessThanDate Query filter that SoftLayer_EventLog likes

Parameters

- **date** (*string*) – upper bound date in mm/dd/yyyy format
- **utc** (*string*) – utc offset. Defaults to '+0000'

`SoftLayer.utils.format_comment(comment, max_line_length=60)`

Return a string that is length long, added a next line and keep the table format.

Parameters

- **comment** (*string*) – String you want to add next line
- **max_line_length** (*int*) – max length for the string

`SoftLayer.utils.format_event_log_date(date_string, utc)`

Gets a date in the format that the SoftLayer_EventLog object likes.

Parameters

- **date_string** (*string*) – date in mm/dd/yyyy format
- **utc** (*string*) – utc offset. Defaults to '+0000'

`SoftLayer.utils.is_ready(instance, pending=False)`

Returns True if instance is ready to be used

Parameters

- **instance** (*Object*) – Hardware or Virt with transaction data retrieved from the API
- **pending** (*bool*) – Wait for ALL transactions to finish?

Returns bool

`SoftLayer.utils.lookup(dic, key, *keys)`

A generic dictionary access helper.

This helps simplify code that uses heavily nested dictionaries. It will return None if any of the keys in **keys* do not exist.

```
>>> lookup({'this': {'is': 'nested'}}, 'this', 'is')
nested

>>> lookup({}, 'this', 'is')
None
```

`SoftLayer.utils.query_filter(query)`

Translate a query-style string to a 'filter'.

Query can be the following formats:

Case Insensitive

'value' OR '= value' *Contains* 'value' OR '^= value' *Begins with value* 'value' OR '\$= value' *Ends with value* '*value' OR '_= value' *Contains value*

Case Sensitive

'~ value' *Contains* '!~ value' *Does not contain* '> value' *Greater than value* '< value' *Less than value* '>= value' *Greater than or equal to value* '<= value' *Less than or equal to value*

Parameters

query (*string*) – query string

`SoftLayer.utils.query_filter_date(start, end)`

Query filters given start and end date.

:param start:YY-MM-DD :param end: YY-MM-DD

`SoftLayer.utils.query_filter_orderby(sort='ASC')`

Returns an object filter operation for sorting

Parameters

sort (*string*) – either ASC or DESC

`SoftLayer.utils.resolve_ids(identifier, resolvers)`

Resolves IDs given a list of functions.

Parameters

- **identifier** (*string*) – identifier string
- **resolvers** (*list*) – a list of functions

Returns list

`SoftLayer.utils.timestamp(date)`

Converts a datetime to timestamp

Parameters

date (*datetime*) –

Returns int

The timestamp of date.

`SoftLayer.utils.trim_to(string, length=80, tail='...')`

Returns a string that is length long. tail added if trimmed

Parameters

- **string** (*string*) – String you want to trim
- **length** (*int*) – max length for the string
- **tail** (*string*) – appended to strings that were trimmed.

COMMAND-LINE INTERFACE

The SoftLayer command line interface is available via the *slcli* command available in your *PATH*. The *slcli* command is a reference implementation of SoftLayer API bindings for python and how to efficiently make API calls. See the *Usage Examples* section to see how to discover all of the functionality not fully documented here.

4.1 Configuration Setup

To update the configuration, you can use *slcli setup*.

```
$ slcli setup
Username []: username
API Key or Password []:
Endpoint (public|private|custom): public
:.....:
:      Name : Value                               :
:.....:
:  Username : username                             :
:  API Key  : oyVmeipYQCNrjVS4rF9bHWV7D75S6pa1fghF1384v7mwRCbHTfuJ8qRORIqoVnha :
: Endpoint URL : https://api.softlayer.com/xmlrpc/v3.1/      :
:.....:
Are you sure you want to write settings to "/home/me/.softlayer"? [y/N]: y
```

To check the configuration, you can use *slcli config show*.

```
$ slcli config show
:.....:
:      Name : Value                               :
:.....:
:  Username : username                             :
:  API Key  : oyVmeipYQCNrjVS4rF9bHWV7D75S6pa1fghF1384v7mwRCbHTfuJ8qRORIqoVnha :
: Endpoint URL : https://api.softlayer.com/xmlrpc/v3.1/      :
:.....:
```

If you are using an account created from the <https://cloud.ibm.com> portal, your username will be literally *apikey*, and use the key provided. [How to create an IBM apikey](#)

To see more about the config file format, see *Configuration File*.

4.2 Usage Examples

To discover the available commands, simply type *slcli*.

```
$ slcli
Usage: slcli [OPTIONS] COMMAND [ARGS]...

SoftLayer Command-line Client

Options:
  --format [table|raw|json|jsonraw] Output format [default: raw]
  -C, --config PATH                  Config file location [default: ~/.softlayer]
  -v, --verbose                      Sets the debug noise level, specify multiple.
↪ times for more verbosity.
  --proxy TEXT                       HTTP[S] proxy to be use to make API calls
  -y, --really / --not-really        Confirm all prompt actions
  --demo / --no-demo                Use demo data instead of actually making API.
↪ calls
  --version                          Show the version and exit.
  -h, --help                         Show this message and exit.

Commands:
  block           Block Storage.
  call-api        Call arbitrary API endpoints.
  cdn             Content Delivery Network.
  config          CLI configuration.
  dedicatedhost  Dedicated Host.
  dns            Domain Name System.
  email          Email Deliviry Network
  event-log      Event Logs.
  file           File Storage.
  firewall       Firewalls.
  globalip      Global IP addresses.
  hardware       Hardware servers.
  image          Compute images.
  ipsec         IPSEC VPN
  loadbal        Load balancers.
  metadata       Find details about this machine.
  nas           Network Attached Storage.
  object-storage Object Storage.
  order          View and order from the catalog.
  report         Reports.
  securitygroup  Network security groups.
  setup          Edit configuration.
  shell          Enters a shell for slcli.
  sshkey        SSH Keys.
  ssl           SSL Certificates.
  subnet        Network subnets.
  summary       Account summary.
  ticket        Support tickets.
  user          Manage Users.
  virtual       Virtual Servers.
  vlan          Network VLANs.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

To use most commands your SoftLayer username and api_key need to be configured. The easiest way to do that is to use: 'slcli setup'

As you can see, there are a number of commands/sections. To look at the list of subcommands for virtual servers type *slcli vs*. For example:

```
$ slcli vs
Usage: slcli vs [OPTIONS] COMMAND [ARGS]...

Virtual Servers.

Options:
  --help  Show this message and exit.

Commands:
  cancel          Cancel virtual servers.
  capture         Capture SoftLayer image.
  create          Order/create virtual servers.
  create-options  Virtual server order options.
  credentials     List virtual server credentials.
  detail          Get details for a virtual server.
  dns-sync        Sync DNS records.
  edit            Edit a virtual server's details.
  list            List virtual servers.
  network         Manage network settings.
  pause           Pauses an active virtual server.
  power_off       Power off an active virtual server.
  power_on        Power on a virtual server.
  ready           Check if a virtual server is ready.
  reboot          Reboot an active virtual server.
  reload          Reload operating system on a virtual server.
  rescue          Reboot into a rescue image.
  resume          Resumes a paused virtual server.
  upgrade         Upgrade a virtual server.
```

Finally, we can make an actual call. Let's list out the virtual servers on our account by using *slcli vs list*.

Example:

```
$ slcli vs list
.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:
:   id   : datacenter :      host      : cores : memory :   primary_ip   : backend_
↪ip   : active_transaction :
.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:
: 1234567 :   sjc01   : test.example.com :    4   :   4G   :    12.34.56    :   65.43.
↪21   :      -      :
.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:.....:
```

Most commands will take in additional options/arguments. To see all available actions, use *-help*.

```
$ slcli vs list --help
Usage: slcli vs list [OPTIONS]

    List virtual servers.

Options:
  --sortby [guid|hostname|primary_ip|backend_ip|datacenter]
                                Column to sort by
  -c, --cpu INTEGER             Number of CPU cores
  -D, --domain TEXT             Domain portion of the FQDN
  -d, --datacenter TEXT        Datacenter shortname
  -H, --hostname TEXT          Host portion of the FQDN
  -m, --memory INTEGER         Memory in mebibytes
  -n, --network TEXT           Network port speed in Mbps
  --hourly                     Show only hourly instances
  --monthly                    Show only monthly instances
  --tags TEXT                  Show instances that have one of these comma-
                                separated tags
  --help                       Show this message and exit.
```

DEBUGGING

To see exactly what API call is being made by the SLCLI, you can use the verbose option.

A single `-v` will show a simple version of the API call, along with some statistics

```
slcli -v vs detail 74397127
Calling: SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::getObject(id=74397127, mask='id,globalIdentifier,
↳fullyQualifiedDomainName,hostname,domain', filter='None', args=(), limit=None,
↳offset=None))
Calling: SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::getReverseDomainRecords(id=77460683, mask='', filter=
↳'None', args=(), limit=None, offset=None))
:.....:
:  name      :                               value      :
:.....:
: execution_time :                2.020334s                :
: api_calls      :      SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::getObject (1.515583s) :
:               :      SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest::getReverseDomainRecords (0.494480s) :
: version        :                softlayer-python/v5.7.2                :
: python_version :      3.7.3 (default, Mar 27 2019, 09:23:15) :
:               :      [Clang 10.0.1 (clang-1001.0.46.3)] :
: library_location : /Users/chris/Code/py3/lib/python3.7/site-packages/SoftLayer :
:.....:
```

Using `-vv` will print out some API call details in the summary as well.

```
slcli -vv account summary
Calling: SoftLayer_Account::getObject(id=None, mask='mask[ nextInvoiceTotalAmount,
↳pendingInvoice[invoiceTotalAmount], blockDeviceTemplateGroupCount, dedicatedHostCount,
↳domainCount, hardwareCount, networkStorageCount, openTicketCount, networkVlanCount,
↳subnetCount, userCount, virtualGuestCount ]', filter='None', args=(), limit=None,
↳offset=None))
:.....:
:  name      :                               value      :
:.....:
: execution_time :                0.921271s                :
: api_calls      :      SoftLayer_Account::getObject (0.911208s) :
: version        :                softlayer-python/v5.7.2                :
: python_version :      3.7.3 (default, Mar 27 2019, 09:23:15) :
:               :      [Clang 10.0.1 (clang-1001.0.46.3)] :
: library_location : /Users/chris/Code/py3/lib/python3.7/site-packages/SoftLayer :
:.....:
:.....:
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

:           :           SoftLayer_Account::getObject           :
:.....:.....:
:  id      :           None                                   :
: mask     :           mask[                                   :
:           :           nextInvoiceTotalAmount,             :
:           :           pendingInvoice[invoiceTotalAmount],  :
:           :           blockDeviceTemplateGroupCount,       :
:           :           dedicatedHostCount,                  :
:           :           domainCount,                          :
:           :           hardwareCount,                        :
:           :           networkStorageCount,                  :
:           :           openTicketCount,                      :
:           :           networkVlanCount,                     :
:           :           subnetCount,                          :
:           :           userCount,                            :
:           :           virtualGuestCount                    :
:           :           ]                                     :
: filter   :           None                                   :
: limit    :           None                                   :
: offset   :           None                                   :
:.....:.....:

```

Using `-vvv` will print out the exact API that can be used without the `softlayer-python` framework, A simple python code snippet for XML-RPC, a curl call for REST API calls. This is dependant on the endpoint you are using in the config file.

```

slcli -vvv account summary
curl -u $SL_USER:$SL_APIKEY -X GET -H "Accept: */*" -H "Accept-Encoding: gzip, deflate,
↪compress" 'https://api.softlayer.com/rest/v3.1/SoftLayer_Account/getObject.json?
↪objectMask=mask%5B%0A+++++++nextInvoiceTotalAmount%2C%0A+++++++pendingInvoice
↪%5BinvoiceTotalAmount%5D%2C%0A+++++++blockDeviceTemplateGroupCount%2C
↪%0A+++++++dedicatedHostCount%2C%0A+++++++domainCount%2C
↪%0A+++++++hardwareCount%2C%0A+++++++networkStorageCount%2C
↪%0A+++++++openTicketCount%2C%0A+++++++networkVlanCount%2C
↪%0A+++++++subnetCount%2C%0A+++++++userCount%2C
↪%0A+++++++virtualGuestCount%0A+++++++%5D'

```


COMMAND DIRECTORY

6.1 Account Commands

6.1.1 account summary

Prints some various bits of information about an account

```
account summary [OPTIONS]
```

6.1.2 account events

Summary and acknowledgement of upcoming and ongoing maintenance events

```
account events [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--ack-all

Acknowledge every upcoming event. Doing so will turn off the popup in the control portal

--planned

Show only planned events

--unplanned

Show only unplanned events

--announcement

Show only announcement events

6.1.3 account event-detail

Details of a specific event, and ability to acknowledge event.

```
account event-detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--ack

Acknowledge Event. Doing so will turn off the popup in the control portal

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.1.4 account invoices

List invoices

```
account invoices [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--limit <limit>

How many invoices to get back.

Default

50

--closed

Include invoices with a CLOSED status.

Default

False

--all

Return ALL invoices. There may be a lot of these.

Default

False

6.1.5 account invoice-detail

Invoice details

```
account invoice-detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--details

Shows a very detailed list of charges

Default

False

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.1.6 account billing-items

Lists billing items with some other useful information.

Similar to <https://cloud.ibm.com/billing/billing-items>

```
account billing-items [OPTIONS]
```

6.1.7 account item-detail

Gets detailed information about a billing item.

```
account item-detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.1.8 account cancel-item

Cancels a billing item.

```
account cancel-item [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.1.9 account orders

Lists account orders. Use *slcli order lookup <ID>* to find more details about a specific order.

```
account orders [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-l, --limit <limit>

How many results to get in one api call

Default

100

6.1.10 account licenses

Show all licenses.

```
account licenses [OPTIONS]
```

6.1.11 account bandwidth-pools

Displays bandwidth pool information

Similar to <https://cloud.ibm.com/classic/network/bandwidth/vdr>

```
account bandwidth-pools [OPTIONS]
```

6.1.12 account bandwidth-pools-detail

Get bandwidth pool details.

```
account bandwidth-pools-detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.2 Autoscale Commands

These commands were added in version 5.8.1

For making changes to the triggers or the autoscale group itself, see the [Autoscale Portal](#)

- [Autoscale Product](#)
- [Autoscale Documentation](#)
- [Autoscale Portal](#)

6.2.1 autoscale list

List AutoScale Groups.

```
autoscale list [OPTIONS]
```

6.2.2 autoscale detail

Get details of an Autoscale groups.

```
autoscale detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.2.3 autoscale delete

Delete this group and destroy all members of it.

Example: slcli autoscale delete autoscaleId

```
autoscale delete [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.3 Block Commands

6.3.1 block access-authorize

Authorizes hosts to access a given volume

```
block access-authorize [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

- h, --hardware-id** <hardware_id>
The id of one SoftLayer_Hardware to authorize (Multiple allowed)
- v, --virtual-id** <virtual_id>
The id of one SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest to authorize (Multiple allowed)
- i, --ip-address-id** <ip_address_id>
The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IPAddress to authorize (Multiple allowed)
- ip-address** <ip_address>
An IP address to authorize (Multiple allowed)

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.3.2 block access-list

List ACLs.

```
block access-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

- sortby** <sortby>
Column to sort by
- columns** <columns>
Columns to display. Options: id, name, type, private_ip_address, source_subnet, host_id, username, password, allowed_host_id

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.3.3 block access-revoke

Revokes authorization for hosts accessing a given volume

```
block access-revoke [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

- h, --hardware-id** <hardware_id>
The id of one SoftLayer_Hardware to revoke authorization
- v, --virtual-id** <virtual_id>
The id of one SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest to revoke authorization
- i, --ip-address-id** <ip_address_id>
The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress to revoke authorization
- ip-address** <ip_address>
An IP address to revoke authorization

Arguments

- VOLUME_ID**
Required argument

6.3.4 block access-password

Changes a password for a volume's access.

access id is the allowed_host_id from slcli block access-list

```
block access-password [OPTIONS] ACCESS_ID
```

Options

- p, --password** <password>
Password you want to set, this command will fail if the password is not strong

Arguments

- ACCESS_ID**
Required argument

6.3.5 block replica-failback

Failback a block volume from the given replicant volume.

```
block replica-failback [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.6 block replica-failover

Failover a block volume to the given replicant volume.

```
block replica-failover [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--replicant-id <replicant_id>

ID of the replicant volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.7 block replica-order

Order a block storage replica volume.

```
block replica-order [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-s, --snapshot-schedule <snapshot_schedule>

Required Snapshot schedule to use for replication, (HOURLY | DAILY | WEEKLY)

Options

HOURLY | DAILY | WEEKLY

-l, --location <location>

Required Short name of the data center for the replicant (e.g.: dal09)

--tier <tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) of the primary volume for which a replicant is ordered [optional]

Options

0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

--os-type <os_type>

Operating System Type (e.g.: LINUX) of the primary volume for which a replica is ordered [optional]

Options

HYPER_V | LINUX | VMWARE | WINDOWS_2008 | WINDOWS_GPT | WINDOWS | XEN

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.8 block replica-partners

List existing replicant volumes for a block volume.

```
block replica-partners [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: ID, Username, Account ID, Capacity (GB), Hardware ID, Guest ID, Host ID

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.9 block replica-locations

List suitable replication datacenters for the given volume.

```
block replica-locations [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: ID, Long Name, Short Name

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.10 block snapshot-cancel

Cancel existing snapshot space for a given volume.

```
block snapshot-cancel [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--reason <reason>

An optional reason for cancellation

--immediate

Cancels the snapshot space immediately instead of on the billing anniversary

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.11 block snapshot-create

Creates a snapshot on a given volume

```
block snapshot-create [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-n, --notes <notes>

Notes to set on the new snapshot

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.12 block snapshot-delete

Deletes a snapshot on a given volume

```
block snapshot-delete [OPTIONS] SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

SNAPSHOT_ID

Required argument

6.3.13 block snapshot-disable

Disables snapshots on the specified schedule for a given volume

```
block snapshot-disable [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--schedule-type <schedule_type>

Required Snapshot schedule [INTERVAL|HOURLY|DAILY|WEEKLY]

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.14 block snapshot-enable

Enables snapshots for a given volume on the specified schedule

```
block snapshot-enable [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--schedule-type <schedule_type>

Required Snapshot schedule [INTERVAL|HOURLY|DAILY|WEEKLY]

--retention-count <retention_count>

Required Number of snapshots to retain

--minute <minute>

Minute of the day when snapshots should be taken

--hour <hour>

Hour of the day when snapshots should be taken

--day-of-week <day_of_week>

Day of the week when snapshots should be taken

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.15 block snapshot-schedule-list

Lists snapshot schedules for a given volume

```
block snapshot-schedule-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.16 block snapshot-list

List block storage snapshots.

```
block snapshot-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: id, name, created, size_bytes

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.17 block snapshot-order

Order snapshot space for a block storage volume.

```
block snapshot-order [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--capacity <capacity>

Required Size of snapshot space to create in GB

--tier <tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) of the block volume for which space is ordered [optional, and only valid for endurance storage volumes]

Options

0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

--upgrade

Flag to indicate that the order is an upgrade

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.18 block snapshot-restore

Restore block volume using a given snapshot

```
block snapshot-restore [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-s, --snapshot-id <snapshot_id>

The id of the snapshot which will be used to restore the block volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.19 block volume-cancel

Cancel an existing block storage volume.

```
block volume-cancel [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--reason <reason>

An optional reason for cancellation

--immediate

Cancels the block storage volume immediately instead of on the billing anniversary

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.20 block volume-count

List number of block storage volumes per datacenter.

```
block volume-count [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Datacenter shortname

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

6.3.21 block volume-options

List all options for ordering a block storage

```
block volume-options [OPTIONS] [LOCATION]
```

Options

-p, --prices

Use `-prices` to list the server item prices, and to list the Item Prices by location, add it to the `-prices` option using location short name, e.g. `-prices dal13`

Arguments

LOCATION

Optional argument

6.3.22 block volume-detail

Display details for a specified volume.

```
block volume-detail [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.23 block volume-duplicate

Order a duplicate block storage volume.

```
block volume-duplicate [OPTIONS] ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-o, --origin-snapshot-id <origin_snapshot_id>

ID of an origin volume snapshot to use for duplication.

-c, --duplicate-size <duplicate_size>

Size of duplicate block volume in GB. ***If no size is specified, the size of the origin volume will be used.*** Potential Sizes: [20, 40, 80, 100, 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, 8000, 12000] Minimum: [the size of the origin volume]

-i, --duplicate-iops <duplicate_iops>

Performance Storage IOPS, between 100 and 6000 in multiples of 100 [only used for performance volumes] ***If no IOPS value is specified, the IOPS value of the origin volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is less than 0.3, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be less than 0.3. If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is greater than or equal to 0.3, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be greater than or equal to 0.3.]

-t, --duplicate-tier <duplicate_tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) [only used for endurance volumes] ***If no tier is specified, the tier of the origin volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is 0.25, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be 0.25. If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is greater than 0.25, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be greater than 0.25.]

Options

0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

-s, --duplicate-snapshot-size <duplicate_snapshot_size>

The size of snapshot space to order for the duplicate. ***If no snapshot space size is specified, the snapshot space size of the origin block volume will be used.*** Input "0" for this parameter to order a duplicate volume with no snapshot space.

--billing <billing>

Optional parameter for Billing rate (default to monthly)

Options

hourly | monthly

--dependent-duplicate <dependent_duplicate>

Whether or not this duplicate will be a dependent duplicate of the origin volume.

Default

False

Arguments

ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.24 block volume-list

List block storage.

```
block volume-list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-u, --username <username>

Volume username

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Datacenter shortname

-o, --order <order>

Filter by ID of the order that purchased the block storage

--storage-type <storage_type>

Type of storage volume

Options

performance | endurance

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: id, username, datacenter, storage_type, capacity_gb, bytes_used, IOPs, ip_addr, lunId, active_transactions, rep_partner_count, created_by, notes

6.3.25 block volume-modify

Modify an existing block storage volume.

```
block volume-modify [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```


Options

-c, --new-size <new_size>

New Size of block volume in GB. ***If no size is given, the original size of volume is used.*** Potential Sizes: [20, 40, 80, 100, 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, 8000, 12000] Minimum: [the original size of the volume]

-i, --new-iops <new_iops>

Performance Storage IOPS, between 100 and 6000 in multiples of 100 [only for performance volumes] ***If no IOPS value is specified, the original IOPS value of the volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If original IOPS/GB for the volume is less than 0.3, new IOPS/GB must also be less than 0.3. If original IOPS/GB for the volume is greater than or equal to 0.3, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be greater than or equal to 0.3.]

-t, --new-tier <new_tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) [only for endurance volumes] ***If no tier is specified, the original tier of the volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If original IOPS/GB for the volume is 0.25, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be 0.25. If original IOPS/GB for the volume is greater than 0.25, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be greater than 0.25.]

Options

0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.26 block volume-order

Order a block storage volume.

Valid size and iops options can be found here: <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/BlockStorage/index.html#provisioning-considerations>

```
block volume-order [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--storage-type <storage_type>

Required Type of block storage volume

Options

performance | endurance

--size <size>

Required Size of block storage volume in GB.

--iops <iops>

Performance Storage IOPs. Options vary based on storage size. [required for storage-type performance]

--tier <tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOP per GB) [required for storage-type endurance]

Options

0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

--os-type <os_type>

Required Operating System

Options

HYPER_V | LINUX | VMWARE | WINDOWS_2008 | WINDOWS_GPT | WINDOWS | XEN

--location <location>

Required Datacenter short name (e.g.: dal09)

--snapshot-size <snapshot_size>

Optional parameter for ordering snapshot space along with endurance block storage; specifies the size (in GB) of snapshot space to order

--service-offering <service_offering>

The service offering package to use for placing the order. [optional, default is 'storage_as_a_service']. enterprise and performance are depreciated

Options

storage_as_a_service | enterprise | performance

--billing <billing>

Optional parameter for Billing rate (default to monthly)

Options

hourly | monthly

6.3.27 block volume-set-lun-id

Set the LUN ID on an existing block storage volume.

The LUN ID only takes effect during the Host Authorization process. It is recommended (but not necessary) to de-authorize all hosts before using this method. See *block access-revoke*.

VOLUME_ID - the volume ID on which to set the LUN ID.

LUN_ID - recommended range is an integer between 0 and 255. Advanced users can use an integer between 0 and 4095.

<code>block volume-set-lun-id [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID LUN_ID</code>

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

LUN_ID

Required argument

6.3.28 block volume-limits

List number of block storage volumes limit per datacenter.

```
block volume-limits [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>
Column to sort by

6.3.29 block volume-refresh

Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

```
block volume-refresh [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

SNAPSHOT_ID
Required argument

6.3.30 block volume-convert

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

```
block volume-convert [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.3.31 block subnets-list

List block storage assigned subnets for the given host id.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: `slcli block access-list <volume_id>`

```
block subnets-list [OPTIONS] ACCESS_ID
```

Arguments

ACCESS_ID

Required argument

6.3.32 block subnets-assign

Assign block storage subnets to the given host id.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: `slcli block access-list <volume_id>`

SoftLayer_Account::iscsiisolationdisabled must be False to use this command

```
block subnets-assign [OPTIONS] ACCESS_ID
```

Options

`--subnet-id <subnet_id>`

ID of the subnets to assign; e.g.: `--subnet-id 1234`

Arguments

ACCESS_ID

Required argument

6.3.33 block subnets-remove

Remove block storage subnets for the given host id.

access_id is the host_id obtained by: `slcli block access-list <volume_id>`

SoftLayer_Account::iscsiisolationdisabled must be False to use this command

```
block subnets-remove [OPTIONS] ACCESS_ID
```

Options

`--subnet-id <subnet_id>`

ID of the subnets to remove; e.g.: `--subnet-id 1234`

Arguments

ACCESS_ID

Required argument

6.3.34 block volume-refresh

Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

```
block volume-refresh [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

SNAPSHOT_ID

Required argument

6.3.35 block volume-convert

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

```
block volume-convert [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.36 block volume-set-note

Set note for an existing block storage volume.

```
block volume-set-note [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-n, --note <note>

Required Public notes related to a Storage volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.37 block disaster-recovery-failover

Failover an inaccessible block volume to its available replicant volume.

```
block disaster-recovery-failover [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--replicant-id <replicant_id>
ID of the replicant volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

Failover an inaccessible block volume to its available replicant volume. If a volume (with replication) becomes inaccessible due to a disaster event, this method can be used to immediately failover to an available replica in another location. This method does not allow for failback via API. After using this method, to failback to the original volume, please open a support ticket. If you wish to test failover, please use replica-failover.

6.3.38 block snapshot-set-notification

Enables/Disables snapshot space usage threshold warning for a given volume

```
block snapshot-set-notification [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--enable, --disable
Required Enable/Disable snapshot notification. Use *slcli block snapshot-set-notification volumeId --enable* to enable

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.3.39 block snapshot-get-notification-status

Get snapshots space usage threshold warning flag setting for a given volume

```
block snapshot-get-notification-status [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.3.40 block object-list

List cloud block storage.

```
block object-list [OPTIONS]
```

6.3.41 block object-storage-detail

Display details for a cloud object storage.

```
block object-storage-detail [OPTIONS] OBJECT_ID
```

Arguments

OBJECT_ID

Required argument

6.3.42 block duplicate-convert-status

Get status for split or move completed percentage of a given block duplicate volume.

```
block duplicate-convert-status [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

Get status for split or move completed percentage of a given block duplicate volume.

6.3.43 block object-storage-permission

Display permission details for a cloud object storage.

```
block object-storage-permission [OPTIONS] OBJECT_ID
```

Arguments

OBJECT_ID

Required argument

6.4 Interacting with CDN

6.4.1 cdn detail

Detail a CDN Account.

```
cdn detail [OPTIONS] UNIQUE_ID
```

Options

--history <history>

Bandwidth, Hits, Ratio counted over history number of days ago. 89 is the maximum.

Arguments

UNIQUE_ID

Required argument

6.4.2 cdn list

List all CDN accounts.

```
cdn list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options

unique_id | domain | origin | vendor | cname | status

6.4.3 cdn origin-add

Create an origin path for an existing CDN mapping.

For more information see the following documentation:

<https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/infrastructure/CDN?topic=CDN-manage-your-cdn#adding-origin-path-details>

```
cdn origin-add [OPTIONS] UNIQUE_ID ORIGIN PATH
```


Options

-t, --origin-type <origin_type>

The origin type.

Default

server

Options

server | storage

-H, --header <header>

The host header to communicate with the origin.

-b, --bucket-name <bucket_name>

The name of the available resource [required if --origin-type=storage]

-p, --port <port>

The http port number.

Default

80

-P, --protocol <protocol>

The protocol used by the origin.

Default

http

-o, --optimize-for <optimize_for>

Performance configuration

Default

web

Options

web | video | file

-e, --extensions <extensions>

File extensions that can be stored in the CDN, example: 'jpg, png, pdf'

-c, --cache-query <cache_query>

Cache query rules with the following formats: 'ignore-all', 'include: <query-names>', 'ignore: <query-names>'

Default

include-all

Arguments

UNIQUE_ID

Required argument

ORIGIN

Required argument

PATH

Required argument

6.4.4 cdn origin-list

List origin path for an existing CDN mapping.

```
cdn origin-list [OPTIONS] UNIQUE_ID
```

Arguments

UNIQUE_ID

Required argument

6.4.5 cdn origin-remove

Removes an origin path for an existing CDN mapping.

```
cdn origin-remove [OPTIONS] UNIQUE_ID ORIGIN_PATH
```

Arguments

UNIQUE_ID

Required argument

ORIGIN_PATH

Required argument

6.4.6 cdn purge

Creates a purge record and also initiates the purge call.

Example:

```
slcli cdn purge 9779455 /article/file.txt
```

For more information see the following documentation:

<https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/infrastructure/CDN?topic=CDN-manage-your-cdn#purging-cached-content>

```
cdn purge [OPTIONS] UNIQUE_ID PATH
```

Arguments

UNIQUE_ID

Required argument

PATH

Required argument

6.4.7 cdn edit

Edit a CDN Account.

Note: You can use the hostname or uniqueId as IDENTIFIER.

```
cdn edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-H, --header <header>

Host header.

-t, --http-port <http_port>

HTTP port.

-s, --https-port <https_port>

HTTPS port.

-o, --origin <origin>

Origin server address.

-r, --respect-headers <respect_headers>

Respect headers. The value 1 is On and 0 is Off.

Options

1 | 0

-c, --cache <cache>

Cache key optimization. These are the valid options to choose: 'include-all', 'ignore-all', 'include-specified', 'ignore-specified'. If you select 'include-specified' or 'ignore-specified' please add a description too using again `-cache`, e.g `-cache=include-specified -cache=description`.

-p, --performance-configuration <performance_configuration>

Optimize for, 'General web delivery', 'Large file optimization', 'Video on demand optimization', the Dynamic content acceleration option is not added because this has a special configuration.

Options

General web delivery | Large file optimization | Video on demand optimization

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.5 Call API

This function allows you to easily call any API. The format is

```
slcli call-api SoftLayer_Service method param1 param2 -id=1234 --mask="mask[id,name]"
```

Parameters should be in the order they are presented on `sldn.softlayer.com`. Any complex parameters (those that link to other datatypes) should be presented as JSON strings. They need to be enclosed in single quotes ('), and variables and strings enclosed in double quotes (").

For example: `{"hostname":"test",ssh_keys:[{"id":1234}]}`

6.5.1 call-api

Call arbitrary API endpoints with the given SERVICE and METHOD.

For parameters that require a datatype, use a JSON string for that parameter. Example:

```
slcli call-api Account getObject
slcli call-api Account getVirtualGuests --limit=10 --mask=id,hostname
slcli call-api Virtual_Guest getObject --id=12345
slcli call-api Metric_Tracking_Object getBandwidthData --id=1234 \
    "2015-01-01 00:00:00" "2015-01-1 12:00:00" public
slcli call-api Account getVirtualGuests \
    -f 'virtualGuests.datacenter.name=dal05' \
    -f 'virtualGuests.maxCpu=4' \
    --mask=id,hostname,datacenter.name,maxCpu
slcli call-api Account getVirtualGuests \
    -f 'virtualGuests.datacenter.name IN dal05,sng01'
slcli call-api Account getVirtualGuests \
    --json-filter '{"virtualGuests":{"hostname":{"operation":"^= test"}}}' --limit=10
slcli -v call-api SoftLayer_User_Customer addBulkPortalPermission --id=1234567 \
    '[{"keyName": "NETWORK_MESSAGE_DELIVERY_MANAGE"}]'
slcli call-api Account getVirtualGuests \
    --orderBy virtualguests.id=ASC
```

```
call-api [OPTIONS] SERVICE METHOD [PARAMETERS]...
```

Options

--id <_id>

Init parameter

-f, --filter <_filters>

Object filters. This should be of the form: 'property=value' or 'nested.property=value'. Complex filters should use `--json-filter`. (multiple occurrence permitted)

--mask <mask>

String-based object mask

--limit <limit>

Result limit

--offset <offset>

Result offset

--orderBy <orderby>

To set the sort direction, ASC or DESC can be provided. This should be of the form: ‘--orderBy nested.property’ default DESC or ‘--orderBy nested.property=ASC’, e.g. --orderBy subnets.id default DESC --orderBy subnets.id=ASC

--output-python, --no-output-python

Show python example code instead of executing the call

--json-filter <json_filter>

A JSON string to be passed in as the object filter to the API call. Remember to use double quotes (") for variable names. Can NOT be used with --filter. Dont use whitespace outside of strings, or the slcli might have trouble parsing it.

Arguments

SERVICE

Required argument

METHOD

Required argument

PARAMETERS

Optional argument(s)

6.6 Shell

6.7 MetaData

Used to retrieve information about the server making the API call. Can be called with an un-authenticated API call.

6.7.1 metadata

Find details about the machine making these API calls.

Table 1: Choices

backend_ip
backend_mac
datacenter
datacenter_id
fqdn
frontend_mac
id
ip
network
provision_state
tags
user_data

```
metadata [OPTIONS] {backend_ip|backend_mac|datacenter|datacenter_id|fqdn|front
end_mac|id|ip|network|provision_state|tags|user_data}
```

Arguments

PROP

Required argument

These commands only work on devices on the backend SoftLayer network. This allows for self-discovery for newly provisioned resources.

6.8 Config

Creating an IBMID apikey IBMId for services

Creating a SoftLayer apikey

6.8.1 config setup

Setup the ~/.softlayer file with username and apikey.

[Auth Types]

ibmid: Requires your cloud.ibm.com username and password, and generates a classic infrastructure API key.

cloud_key: A 32 character API key. Username will be 'apikey'

classic_key: A 64 character API key used in the Softlayer/Classic Infrastructure systems.

sso: For users with @ibm.com email addresses.

```
config setup [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-a, --auth <auth>

Select a method of authentication.

Default

classic_key

Options

ibmid | cloud_key | classic_key | sso

6.8.2 config show

Show current configuration.

```
config show [OPTIONS]
```

6.8.3 setup

Setup the ~/.softlayer file with username and apikey.

[Auth Types]

ibmid: Requires your cloud.ibm.com username and password, and generates a classic infrastructure API key.

cloud_key: A 32 character API key. Username will be 'apikey'

classic_key: A 64 character API key used in the Softlayer/Classic Infrastructure systems.

sso: For users with @ibm.com email addresses.

```
setup [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-a, --auth <auth>

Select a method of authentication.

Default

classic_key

Options

ibmid | cloud_key | classic_key | sso

6.9 Dedicated Host Commands

6.9.1 dedicatedhost list

List dedicated host.

```
dedicatedhost list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-c, --cpu <cpu>

Number of CPU cores

--tag <tag>

Filter by tags (multiple occurrence permitted)

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Default

name

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. [options: datacenter, created_by, tags]

Default

id,name,cpuCount,diskCapacity,memoryCapacity,datacenter,guestCount

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Datacenter shortname

-H, --name <name>

Host portion of the FQDN

-m, --memory <memory>

Memory capacity in mebibytes

-D, --disk <disk>

Disk capacity

6.9.2 dedicatedhost create

Order/create a dedicated host.

```
dedicatedhost create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-H, --hostname <hostname>

Required Host portion of the FQDN

-r, --router <router>

Router hostname ex. fcr02a.dal13

-D, --domain <domain>

Required Domain portion of the FQDN

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Required Datacenter shortname

-f, --flavor <flavor>

Required Dedicated Virtual Host flavor

--billing <billing>

Billing rate

Default

hourly

Options

hourly | monthly

--verify

Verify dedicatedhost without creating it.

-t, --template <template>

A template file that defaults the command-line options

--export <export>

Exports options to a template file

See 'slcli dedicatedhost create-options' for valid options.

6.9.3 dedicatedhost create-options

host order options for a given dedicated host.

To get a list of available backend routers see example: `slcli dh create-options --datacenter dal05 --flavor 56_CORES_X_242_RAM_X_1_4_TB`

```
dedicatedhost create-options [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Router hostname (requires --flavor) ex. ams01

-f, --flavor <flavor>

Dedicated Virtual Host flavor (requires --datacenter) ex. 56_CORES_X_242_RAM_X_1_4_TB

6.9.4 dedicatedhost detail

Get details for a dedicated host.

```
dedicatedhost detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--price

Show associated prices

--guests

Show guests on dedicated host

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.9.5 dedicatedhost cancel

Cancel a dedicated host server immediately

```
dedicatedhost cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.9.6 dedicatedhost cancel-guests

Cancel all virtual guests of the dedicated host immediately.

Use the ‘slcli vs cancel’ command to cancel an specific guest

```
dedicatedhost cancel-guests [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.9.7 dedicatedhost list-guests

List guests which are in a dedicated host server.

```
dedicatedhost list-guests [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-c, --cpu <cpu>

Number of CPU cores

-D, --domain <domain>

Domain portion of the FQDN

-H, --hostname <hostname>

Host portion of the FQDN

-m, --memory <memory>

Memory in mebibytes

--tag <tag>

Filter by tags (multiple occurrence permitted)

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Default

hostname

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. [options: guid, cpu, memory, datacenter, primary_ip, backend_ip, created_by, power_state, tags]

Default

id,hostname,domain,primary_ip,backend_ip,power_state

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.10 DNS Management

6.10.1 dns import

Import zone based off a BIND zone file.

```
dns import [OPTIONS] ZONEFILE
```

Options

--dry-run

Don't actually create records

Arguments

ZONEFILE

Required argument

6.10.2 dns record-add

Add resource record.

Each resource record contains a RECORD and DATA property, defining a resource's name and it's target data. Domains contain multiple types of resource records so it can take one of the following values: A, AAAA, CNAME, MX, SPF, SRV, and PTR.

About reverse records (PTR), the RECORD value must to be the public Ip Address of device you would like to manage reverse DNS.

```
slcli dns record-add 10.10.8.21 PTR myhost.com --ttl=900
```

Examples:

```
slcli dns record-add myhost.com A 192.168.1.10 --zone=foobar.com --ttl=900

slcli dns record-add myhost.com AAAA 2001:DB8::1 --zone=foobar.com

slcli dns record-add 192.168.1.2 MX 192.168.1.10 --zone=foobar.com --priority=11 --ttl=1800

slcli dns record-add myhost.com TXT "txt-verification=rXOxyZounZs87oacJSKvbUSIQ"
--zone=2223334

slcli dns record-add myhost.com SPF "v=spf1 include:_spf.google.com ~all" --zone=2223334

slcli dns record-add myhost.com SRV 192.168.1.10 --zone=2223334 --service=foobar --port=80 --proto-
col=TCP
```

<code>dns record-add [OPTIONS] RECORD RECORD_TYPE DATA</code>

Options

--zone <zone>

Zone name or identifier that the resource record will be associated with. Required for all record types except PTR

--ttl <ttl>

TTL value in seconds, such as 86400

Default

900

--priority <priority>

The priority of the target host. (MX or SRV type only)

Default

10

--protocol <protocol>

The protocol of the service, usually either TCP or UDP. (SRV type only)

Default

tcp

Options

tcp | udp | tls

--port <port>

The TCP/UDP/TLS port on which the service is to be found. (SRV type only)

--service <service>

The symbolic name of the desired service. (SRV type only)

--weight <weight>

Relative weight for records with same priority. (SRV type only)

Default

5

Arguments

RECORD

Required argument

RECORD_TYPE

Required argument

DATA

Required argument

6.10.3 dns record-edit

Update DNS record.

```
dns record-edit [OPTIONS] ZONE_ID
```

Options

--by-record <by_record>

Edit by host record, such as www

--by-id <by_id>

Edit a single record by its ID

--data <data>

Record data, such as an IP address

--ttl <ttl>

TTL value in seconds, such as 86400

Arguments

ZONE_ID

Required argument

6.10.4 dns record-list

List all records in a zone.

```
dns record-list [OPTIONS] ZONE
```

Options

- data** <data>
Record data, such as an IP address
- record** <record>
Host record, such as www
- ttl** <ttl>
TTL value in seconds, such as 86400
- type** <record_type>
Record type, such as A or CNAME

Arguments

- ZONE**
Required argument

6.10.5 dns record-remove

Remove resource record.

```
dns record-remove [OPTIONS] RECORD_ID
```

Arguments

- RECORD_ID**
Required argument

6.10.6 dns zone-create

Create a zone.

```
dns zone-create [OPTIONS] ZONE
```

Arguments

- ZONE**
Required argument

6.10.7 dns zone-delete

Delete zone.

```
dns zone-delete [OPTIONS] ZONE
```

Arguments

ZONE

Required argument

6.10.8 dns zone-list

List all zones.

```
dns zone-list [OPTIONS]
```

6.10.9 dns zone-print

Print zone in BIND format.

```
dns zone-print [OPTIONS] ZONE
```

Arguments

ZONE

Required argument

6.11 Email Commands

6.11.1 email list

Lists Email Delivery Service

```
email list [OPTIONS]
```

6.11.2 email detail

Display details for a specified email.

```
email detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.11.3 email edit

Edit details of an email delivery account.

```
email edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--username <username>

Sets username for this account

--email <email>

Sets the contact email for this account

--password <password>

Password must be between 8 and 20 characters and must contain one letter and one number.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.12 Event-Log Commands

6.12.1 event-log get

Get Event Logs

Example:

```
slcli event-log get -d 01/01/2019 -D 02/01/2019 -t User -l 10
```

```
event-log get [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --date-min <date_min>

The earliest date we want to search for event logs in mm/dd/yyyy format.

-D, --date-max <date_max>

The latest date we want to search for event logs in mm/dd/yyyy format.

-e, --obj-event <obj_event>

The event we want to get event logs for

-i, --obj-id <obj_id>
 The id of the object we want to get event logs for

-t, --obj-type <obj_type>
 The type of the object we want to get event logs for

-z, --utc-offset <utc_offset>
 UTC Offset for searching with dates. +/-HHMM format

Default
 -0000

--metadata, --no-metadata
 Display metadata if present

Default
 False

-l, --limit <limit>
 Total number of result to return. -1 to return ALL, there may be a LOT of these.

Default
 50

There are usually quite a few events on an account, so be careful when using the `--limit -1` option. The command will automatically break requests out into smaller sub-requests, but this command may take a very long time to complete. It will however print out data as it comes in.

6.12.2 event-log types

Get Event Log Types

```
event-log types [OPTIONS]
```

Currently the types are as follows, more may be added in the future.

```
: .....:
:      types      :
: .....:
:      Account    :
:      CDN        :
:      User       :
: Bare Metal Instance :
: API Authentication :
:      Server     :
:      CCI        :
:      Image      :
:      Bluemix LB  :
:      Facility    :
: Cloud Object Storage :
:      Security Group :
: .....:
```

6.13 File Commands

6.13.1 file access-authorize

Authorizes hosts to access a given volume

```
file access-authorize [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-h, --hardware-id <hardware_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Hardware to authorize (Multiple allowed)

-v, --virtual-id <virtual_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest to authorize (Multiple allowed)

-i, --ip-address-id <ip_address_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress to authorize (Multiple allowed)

--ip-address <ip_address>

An IP address to authorize (Multiple allowed)

-s, --subnet-id <subnet_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet to authorize (Multiple allowed)

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.2 file access-list

List ACLs.

```
file access-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: id, name, type, private_ip_address, source_subnet, host_id, username, password, allowed_host_id

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.3 file access-revoke

Revokes authorization for hosts accessing a given volume

```
file access-revoke [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-h, --hardware-id <hardware_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Hardware to revoke authorization

-v, --virtual-id <virtual_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Virtual_Guest to revoke authorization

-i, --ip-address-id <ip_address_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet_IpAddress to revoke authorization

--ip-address <ip_address>

An IP address to revoke authorization

-s, --subnet-id <subnet_id>

The id of one SoftLayer_Network_Subnet to revoke authorization

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.4 file replica-failback

Failback a file volume from the given replicant volume.

```
file replica-failback [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.5 file replica-failover

Failover a file volume to the given replicant volume.

```
file replica-failover [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--replicant-id <replicant_id>
ID of the replicant volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.13.6 file replica-order

Order a file storage replica volume.

```
file replica-order [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-s, --snapshot-schedule <snapshot_schedule>
Required Snapshot schedule to use for replication, (HOURLY | DAILY | WEEKLY)

Options
HOURLY | DAILY | WEEKLY

-l, --location <location>
Required Short name of the data center for the replicant (e.g.: dal09)

--tier <tier>
Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) of the primary volume for which a replicant is ordered [optional]

Options
0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

Arguments

VOLUME_ID
Required argument

6.13.7 file replica-partners

List existing replicant volumes for a file volume.

```
file replica-partners [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: ID, Username, Account ID, Capacity (GB), Hardware ID, Guest ID, Host ID

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.8 file replica-locations

List suitable replication datacenters for the given volume.

```
file replica-locations [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: ID, Long Name, Short Name

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.9 file snapshot-cancel

Cancel existing snapshot space for a given volume.

```
file snapshot-cancel [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--reason <reason>

An optional reason for cancellation

--immediate

Cancels the snapshot space immediately instead of on the billing anniversary

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.10 file snapshot-create

Creates a snapshot on a given volume

```
file snapshot-create [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-n, --notes <notes>

Notes to set on the new snapshot

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.11 file snapshot-delete

Deletes a snapshot on a given volume

```
file snapshot-delete [OPTIONS] SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

SNAPSHOT_ID

Required argument

6.13.12 file snapshot-disable

Disables snapshots on the specified schedule for a given volume

```
file snapshot-disable [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--schedule-type <schedule_type>

Required Snapshot schedule [INTERVAL|HOURLY|DAILY|WEEKLY]

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.13 file snapshot-enable

Enables snapshots for a given volume on the specified schedule

```
file snapshot-enable [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--schedule-type <schedule_type>

Required Snapshot schedule [INTERVAL|HOURLY|DAILY|WEEKLY]

--retention-count <retention_count>

Required Number of snapshots to retain

--minute <minute>

Minute of the day when snapshots should be taken

--hour <hour>

Hour of the day when snapshots should be taken

--day-of-week <day_of_week>

Day of the week when snapshots should be taken

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.14 file snapshot-list

List file storage snapshots.

```
file snapshot-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: id, name, created, size_bytes

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.15 file snapshot-order

Order snapshot space for a file storage volume.

```
file snapshot-order [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--capacity <capacity>

Required Size of snapshot space to create in GB

--tier <tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) of the file volume for which space is ordered [optional, and only valid for endurance storage volumes]

Options

0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

--upgrade

Flag to indicate that the order is an upgrade

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.16 file snapshot-restore

Restore file volume using a given snapshot

```
file snapshot-restore [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-s, --snapshot-id <snapshot_id>

The id of the snapshot which will be used to restore the block volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.17 file volume-cancel

Cancel an existing file storage volume.

```
file volume-cancel [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--reason <reason>

An optional reason for cancellation

--immediate

Cancels the file storage volume immediately instead of on the billing anniversary

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.18 file volume-count

List number of file storage volumes per datacenter.

```
file volume-count [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- d, --datacenter** <datacenter>
Datacenter shortname
- sortby** <sortby>
Column to sort by

6.13.19 file volume-detail

Display details for a specified volume.

```
file volume-detail [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

- VOLUME_ID**
Required argument

6.13.20 file volume-duplicate

Order a duplicate file storage volume.

```
file volume-duplicate [OPTIONS] ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID
```

Options

- o, --origin-snapshot-id** <origin_snapshot_id>
ID of an origin volume snapshot to use for duplication.
- c, --duplicate-size** <duplicate_size>
Size of duplicate file volume in GB. ***If no size is specified, the size of the origin volume will be used.***
Minimum: [the size of the origin volume]
- i, --duplicate-iops** <duplicate_iops>
Performance Storage IOPS, between 100 and 6000 in multiples of 100 [only used for performance volumes] ***If no IOPS value is specified, the IOPS value of the origin volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is less than 0.3, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be less than 0.3. If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is greater than or equal to 0.3, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be greater than or equal to 0.3.]
- t, --duplicate-tier** <duplicate_tier>
Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) [only used for endurance volumes] ***If no tier is specified, the tier of the origin volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is 0.25, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be 0.25. If IOPS/GB for the origin volume is greater than 0.25, IOPS/GB for the duplicate must also be greater than 0.25.]

Options

0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

-s, --duplicate-snapshot-size <duplicate_snapshot_size>

The size of snapshot space to order for the duplicate. ***If no snapshot space size is specified, the snapshot space size of the origin file volume will be used.*** Input “0” for this parameter to order a duplicate volume with no snapshot space.

--billing <billing>

Optional parameter for Billing rate (default to monthly)

Options

hourly | monthly

--dependent-duplicate <dependent_duplicate>

Whether or not this duplicate will be a dependent duplicate of the origin volume.

Default

False

Arguments

ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.21 file volume-list

List file storage.

```
file volume-list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-u, --username <username>

Volume username

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Datacenter shortname

-o, --order <order>

Filter by ID of the order that purchased the block storage

--storage-type <storage_type>

Type of storage volume

Options

performance | endurance

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. Options: id, username, datacenter, storage_type, capacity_gb, bytes_used, ip_addr, active_transactions, mount_addr, rep_partner_count, created_by, notes

6.13.22 file volume-modify

Modify an existing file storage volume.

```
file volume-modify [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-c, --new-size <new_size>

New Size of file volume in GB. ***If no size is given, the original size of volume is used.*** Potential Sizes: [20, 40, 80, 100, 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, 8000, 12000] Minimum: [the original size of the volume]

-i, --new-iops <new_iops>

Performance Storage IOPS, between 100 and 6000 in multiples of 100 [only for performance volumes] ***If no IOPS value is specified, the original IOPS value of the volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If original IOPS/GB for the volume is less than 0.3, new IOPS/GB must also be less than 0.3. If original IOPS/GB for the volume is greater than or equal to 0.3, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be greater than or equal to 0.3.]

-t, --new-tier <new_tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOPS per GB) [only for endurance volumes] ***If no tier is specified, the original tier of the volume will be used.*** Requirements: [If original IOPS/GB for the volume is 0.25, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be 0.25. If original IOPS/GB for the volume is greater than 0.25, new IOPS/GB for the volume must also be greater than 0.25.]

Options

0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.23 file volume-order

Order a file storage volume.

Valid size and iops options can be found here: <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/FileStorage/index.html#provisioning-considerations>

```
file volume-order [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--storage-type <storage_type>

Required Type of file storage volume

Options

performance | endurance

--size <size>

Required Size of file storage volume in GB

--iops <iops>

Performance Storage IOPs. Options vary based on storage size. [required for storage-type performance]

--tier <tier>

Endurance Storage Tier (IOP per GB) [required for storage-type endurance]

Options

0.25 | 2 | 4 | 10

--location <location>

Required Datacenter short name (e.g.: dal09)

--snapshot-size <snapshot_size>

Optional parameter for ordering snapshot space along with endurance file storage; specifies the size (in GB) of snapshot space to order

--service-offering <service_offering>

The service offering package to use for placing the order. [optional, default is 'storage_as_a_service']. enterprise and performance are depreciated

Options

storage_as_a_service | enterprise | performance

--billing <billing>

Optional parameter for Billing rate (default to monthly)

Options

hourly | monthly

6.13.24 file volume-limits

List number of block storage volumes limit per datacenter.

```
file volume-limits [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

6.13.25 file volume-refresh

Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

```
file volume-refresh [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

SNAPSHOT_ID

Required argument

6.13.26 file volume-convert

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

```
file volume-convert [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.27 file snapshot-schedule-list

Lists snapshot schedules for a given volume

```
file snapshot-schedule-list [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.28 file volume-refresh

Refresh a duplicate volume with a snapshot from its parent.

```
file volume-refresh [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID SNAPSHOT_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

SNAPSHOT_ID

Required argument

6.13.29 file volume-convert

Convert a dependent duplicate volume to an independent volume.

```
file volume-convert [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.30 file volume-set-note

Set note for an existing file storage volume.

```
file volume-set-note [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

-n, --note <note>

Required Public notes related to a Storage volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.31 file volume-options

List all options for ordering a block storage

```
file volume-options [OPTIONS] [LOCATION]
```

Options

-p, --prices

Use `--prices` to list the server item prices, and to list the Item Prices by location, add it to the `--prices` option using location short name, e.g. `--prices dal13`

Arguments

LOCATION

Optional argument

6.13.32 file disaster-recovery-failover

Failover an inaccessible file volume to its available replicant volume.

```
file disaster-recovery-failover [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--replicant-id <replicant_id>

ID of the replicant volume

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

Failover an inaccessible file volume to its available replicant volume. If a volume (with replication) becomes inaccessible due to a disaster event, this method can be used to immediately failover to an available replica in another location. This method does not allow for failback via API. After using this method, to failback to the original volume, please open a support ticket. If you wish to test failover, please use replica-failover.

6.13.33 file snapshot-set-notification

Enables/Disables snapshot space usage threshold warning for a given volume

```
file snapshot-set-notification [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Options

--enable, --disable

Required Enable/Disable snapshot notification. Use *slcli file snapshot-set-notification volumeId --enable* to enable

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.34 file snapshot-get-notification-status

Get snapshots space usage threshold warning flag setting for a given volume

```
file snapshot-get-notification-status [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

6.13.35 file duplicate-convert-status

Get status for split or move completed percentage of a given file duplicate volume.

```
file duplicate-convert-status [OPTIONS] VOLUME_ID
```

Arguments

VOLUME_ID

Required argument

Get status for split or move completed percentage of a given file duplicate volume.

6.14 Firewall Management

6.14.1 firewall add

Create new firewall.

TARGET: Id of the server the firewall will protect

```
firewall add [OPTIONS] TARGET
```

Options

--firewall-type <firewall_type>

Required Firewall type

Options

vs | vlan | server

-ha, --high-availability

High available firewall option

Arguments

TARGET

Required argument

6.14.2 firewall cancel

Cancels a firewall.

```
firewall cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.14.3 firewall detail

Detail firewall.

EXAMPLES:

```
slcli firewall detail vs:12345
```

```
slcli firewall detail --credentials true multiVlan:456789
```

```
firewall detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--credentials <credentials>

Display FortiGate username and FortiGate password to multi vlans.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.14.4 firewall edit

Edit firewall rules.

```
firewall edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.14.5 firewall list

List firewalls.

```
firewall list [OPTIONS]
```

6.14.6 firewall monitoring

Gets bandwidth details for a firewall from the past 30 days.

```
firewall monitoring [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.15 Global IP Addresses

6.15.1 globalip assign

Assigns the subnet to a target.

```
globalip assign [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--target <target>

choose the type. vlan, ip, hardware, vsi

Options

vlan | ip | hardware | vsi

--target-id <target_id>

The identifier for the destination resource to route this subnet to.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

More information about types and identifiers on https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Network_Subnet/route/

6.15.2 globalip cancel

Cancel global IP.

```
globalip cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.15.3 globalip create

Creates a global IP.

```
globalip create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-v6, --ipv6

Order a IPv6 IP

--test <test>

test order

6.15.4 globalip list

List all global IPs.

```
globalip list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--ip-version <ip_version>

Display only IPv4

Options

v4 | v6

6.15.5 globalip unassign

Unassigns a global IP from a target.

```
globalip unassign [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16 Interacting with Hardware

6.16.1 hardware bandwidth

Bandwidth data over date range. Bandwidth is listed in GB

Using just a date might get you times off by 1 hour, use T00:01 to get just the specific days data Timezones can also be included with the YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss.000000-HH:mm format.

Due to some rounding and date alignment details, results here might be slightly different than results in the control portal.

Example:

```
slcli hw bandwidth 1234 -s 2019-05-01T00:01 -e 2019-05-02T00:00:01.000000-12:00
```

```
hardware bandwidth [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-s, --start_date <start_date>

Required Start Date YYYY-MM-DD, YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss,

-e, --end_date <end_date>

Required End Date YYYY-MM-DD, YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss

-p, --summary_period <summary_period>

300, 600, 1800, 3600, 43200 or 86400 seconds

Default

3600

-q, --quite_summary

Only show the summary table

Default

False

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.2 hardware cancel-reasons

Display a list of cancellation reasons.

```
hardware cancel-reasons [OPTIONS]
```

6.16.3 hardware cancel

Cancel a dedicated server.

```
hardware cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--immediate

Cancels the server immediately (instead of on the billing anniversary)

--comment <comment>

An optional comment to add to the cancellation ticket

--reason <reason>

An optional cancellation reason. See cancel-reasons for a list of available options

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.4 hardware create-options

Server order options for a given chassis.

```
hardware create-options [OPTIONS] [LOCATION]
```

Options

-p, --prices

Use `-prices` to list the server item prices, and to list the Item Prices by location, add it to the `-prices` option using location short name, e.g. `-prices dal13`

Arguments

LOCATION

Optional argument

6.16.5 hardware create

Order/create a dedicated server.

```
hardware create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- H, --hostname <hostname>**
Required Host portion of the FQDN
- D, --domain <domain>**
Required Domain portion of the FQDN
- s, --size <size>**
Required Hardware size
- o, --os <os>**
Required OS Key value
- d, --datacenter <datacenter>**
Required Datacenter shortname
- port-speed <port_speed>**
 Port speeds. DEPRECATED, use `--network`
- no-public**
 Private network only. DEPRECATED, use `--network`.
- network <network>**
 Network Option Key. Use instead of port-speed option
- billing <billing>**
 Billing rate
 Default
 hourly
 Options
 hourly | monthly
- i, --postinstall <postinstall>**
 Post-install script. Should be a HTTPS URL.
- test**
 Do not actually create the server
- t, --template <template>**
 A template file that defaults the command-line options

--export <export>

Exports options to a template file

--wait <wait>

Wait until the server is finished provisioning for up to X seconds before returning

--router-public <router_public>

The ID of the public ROUTER on which you want the virtual server placed

--router-private <router_private>

The ID of the private ROUTER on which you want the virtual server placed

-k, --key <key>

SSH keys to add to the root user (multiple occurrence permitted)

-e, --extra <extra>

Extra option Key Names (multiple occurrence permitted)

See 'slcli server create-options' for valid options.

6.16.6 hardware monitoring

Get details for a hardware monitors device.

```
hardware monitoring [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

Provides some basic functionality to order a server. *slcli order* has a more full featured method of ordering servers. This command only supports the FAST_PROVISION type.

As of v5.9.0 please use the *--network* option for specifying port speed, as that allows a bit more granularity for choosing your networking type.

6.16.7 hardware credentials

List server credentials.

```
hardware credentials [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.8 hardware detail

Get details for a hardware device.

```
hardware detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--passwords

Show passwords (check over your shoulder!)

--price

Show associated prices

--components

Show associated hardware components

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.9 hardware billing

Get billing for a hardware device.

```
hardware billing [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.10 hardware edit

Edit hardware details.

```
hardware edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-D, --domain <domain>

Domain portion of the FQDN

-F, --userfile <userfile>

Read userdata from file

-g, --tag <tag>
Tags to set or empty string to remove all

-H, --hostname <hostname>
Host portion of the FQDN

-u, --userdata <userdata>
User defined metadata string

--public-speed <public_speed>
Public port speed. -1 is best speed available

Options
 0 | 10 | 100 | 1000 | 10000 | -1

--private-speed <private_speed>
Private port speed. -1 is best speed available

Options
 0 | 10 | 100 | 1000 | 10000 | -1

--redundant
The desired state of redundancy for the interface(s)

--degraded
The desired state of degraded for the interface(s)

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

Note : Using multiple ‘ : ’ can cause an error.

```
$ slcli hw edit 123456 --tag "cloud:service:db2whoc, cloud:svcplan:flex, cloud:svcenv:prod, cloud:bmixenv:fra"
```

```
TransportError(0): ('Connection aborted.',
```

```
RemoteDisconnected('Remote end closed connection without response',))
```

When setting port speed, use “-1” to indicate best possible configuration. Using 10/100/1000/10000 on a server with a redundant interface may result the interface entering a degraded state. See [setPublicNetworkInterfaceSpeed](#) for more information.

6.16.11 hardware list

List hardware servers.

`hardware list [OPTIONS]`

Options

-c, --cpu <cpu>
Filter by number of CPU cores

-D, --domain <domain>
Filter by domain

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>
Filter by datacenter

-H, --hostname <hostname>
Filter by hostname

-m, --memory <memory>
Filter by memory in gigabytes

-n, --network <network>
Filter by network port speed in Mbps

--tag <tag>
Filter by tags (multiple occurrence permitted)

--sortby <sortby>
Column to sort by

Default
hostname

--columns <columns>
Columns to display. [options: guid, primary_ip, backend_ip, datacenter, action, created_by, tags]

Default
id,hostname,primary_ip,backend_ip,datacenter,action

-l, --limit <limit>
How many results to get in one api call, default is 100

Default
100

6.16.12 hardware power-cycle

Power cycle a server.

hardware power-cycle [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.13 hardware power-off

Power off an active server.

```
hardware power-off [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.14 hardware power-on

Power on a server.

```
hardware power-on [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.15 hardware reboot

Reboot an active server.

```
hardware reboot [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--hard, --soft

Perform a hard or soft reboot

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.16 hardware reload

Reload operating system on a server.

```
hardware reload [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-i, --postinstall <postinstall>

Post-install script to download (Only HTTPS executes, HTTP leaves file in /root)

-k, --key <key>

SSH keys to add to the root user (multiple occurrence permitted)

-l, --lvm

A flag indicating that the provision should use LVM for all logical drives.

Default

False

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.17 hardware rescue

Reboot server into a rescue image.

```
hardware rescue [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.18 hardware reflash-firmware

Reflash server firmware.

```
hardware reflash-firmware [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

Reflash here means the current version of the firmware running on your server will be re-flashed onto the selected hardware. This does require a reboot. See *slcli hw update-firmware* if you want the newest version.

6.16.19 hardware update-firmware

Update server firmware.

```
hardware update-firmware [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

This function updates the firmware of a server. If already at the latest version, no software is installed.

6.16.20 hardware toggle-ipmi

Toggle the IPMI interface on and off

```
hardware toggle-ipmi [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--enable, --disable

Whether enable (DEFAULT) or disable the interface.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.21 hardware ready

Check if a server is ready.

```
hardware ready [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--wait <wait>
Seconds to wait
Default
0

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.16.22 hardware dns-sync

Sync DNS records.

```
hardware dns-sync [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-a, --a-record
Sync the A record for the host

--aaaa-record
Sync the AAAA record for the host

--ptr
Sync the PTR record for the host

--ttl <ttl>
Sets the TTL for the A and/or PTR records
Default
7200

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

If you don't specify any arguments, it will attempt to update both the A and PTR records. If you don't want to update both records, you may use the -a or -ptr arguments to limit the records updated.

6.16.23 hardware storage

Get storage details for a hardware server.

```
hardware storage [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.24 hardware authorize-storage

Authorize File or Block Storage to a Hardware Server.

```
hardware authorize-storage [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-u, --username-storage <username_storage>

The storage username to be added to the hardware server

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.25 hardware upgrade

Upgrade a Hardware Server.

```
hardware upgrade [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```


Options

--memory <memory>

Memory Size in GB

--network <network>

Network port speed in Mbps

Options

100 | 100 Redundant | 100 Dual | 1000 | 1000 Redundant | 1000 Dual | 10000 | 10000 Redundant
| 10000 Dual

--drive-controller <drive_controller>

Drive Controller

Options

Non-RAID | RAID

--public-bandwidth <public_bandwidth>

Public Bandwidth in GB

--add-disk <add_disk>

Add a Hard disk in GB to a specific channel, e.g 1000 GB in disk2, it will be `--add-disk 1000 2`

--resize-disk <resize_disk>

Upgrade a specific disk size in GB, e.g `--resize-disk 2000 2`

--test

Do not actually upgrade the hardware server

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.16.26 hardware sensor

Retrieve a server's hardware state via its internal sensors.

```
hardware sensor [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--discrete

Show discrete units associated hardware sensor

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.17 Disk Image Commands

6.17.1 image delete

Delete an image.

```
image delete [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.17.2 image detail

Get details for an image.

```
image detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.17.3 image edit

Edit details of an image.

```
image edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--name <name>

Name of the image

--note <note>

Additional note for the image

--tag <tag>

Tags for the image

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.17.4 image list

List images.

```
image list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--name <name>

Filter on image name

--public, **--private**

Display only public or private images

6.17.5 image import

Import an image.

The URI for an object storage object (.vhd/.iso file) of the format: swift://<objectStorageAccount>@<cluster>/<container>/<objectPath> or cos://<regionName>/<bucketName>/<objectPath> if using IBM Cloud Object Storage

```
image import [OPTIONS] NAME URI
```

Options

--note <note>

The note to be applied to the imported template

--os-code <os_code>

The referenceCode of the operating system software description for the imported VHD, ISO, or RAW image

--ibm-api-key <ibm_api_key>

The IBM Cloud API Key with access to IBM Cloud Object Storage instance and IBM KeyProtect instance. For help creating this key see <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/cloud-object-storage?topic=cloud-object-storage-iam-overview#iam-overview-service-id-api-key>

--root-key-crn <root_key_crn>

CRN of the root key in your KMS instance

--wrapped-dek <wrapped_dek>

Wrapped Data Encryption Key provided by IBM KeyProtect. For more info see <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/key-protect?topic=key-protect-wrap-keys>

--cloud-init

Specifies if image is cloud-init

--byol

Specifies if image is bring your own license

--is-encrypted

Specifies if image is encrypted

Arguments

NAME

Required argument

URI

Required argument

6.17.6 image export

Export an image to object storage.

The URI for an object storage object (.vhd/.iso file) of the format: swift://<objectStorageAccount>@<cluster>/<container>/<objectPath> or cos://<regionName>/<bucketName>/<objectPath> if using IBM Cloud Object Storage

image export [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER URI
--

Options

--ibm-api-key <ibm_api_key>

The IBM Cloud API Key with access to IBM Cloud Object Storage instance. For help creating this key see <https://cloud.ibm.com/docs/cloud-object-storage?topic=cloud-object-storage-iam-overview#iam-overview-service-id-api-key>

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

URI

Required argument

6.17.7 image datacenter

Add/Remove datacenter of an image.

image datacenter [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER LOCATIONS...

Options

--add, --remove

To add or remove Datacenter

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

LOCATIONS

Required argument(s)

6.18 Interacting with IPSEC Tunnels

The IPSEC *Command-line Interface* commands can be used to configure an existing IPSEC tunnel context. Subnets in the SoftLayer private network can be associated to the tunnel context along with user-defined remote subnets. Address translation entries may also be defined to provide NAT functionality from static subnet IP addresses associated with the tunnel context to user-defined remote subnet IP addresses.

Note: Most CLI actions that affect an IPSEC tunnel context do not result in configuration changes to SoftLayer network devices. A separate *configure* command is available to issue a device configuration request.

To see more information about the IPSEC tunnel context module and API interaction, see *IPSEC Module* documentation.

6.18.1 ipsec list

ipsec list

List IPsec VPN tunnel contexts

```
ipsec list [OPTIONS]
```

A list of all IPSEC tunnel contexts associated with the current user's account can be retrieved via the `ipsec list` command. This provides a brief overview of all tunnel contexts and can be used to retrieve an individual context's identifier, which all other CLI commands require.

```
$ slcli ipsec list
.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
: id :   name   : friendly name : internal peer IP address : remote peer IP address : ↪
↪      created      :
.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
: 445 : ipsec038 : ipsec tunnel :      173.192.250.79      :      158.85.80.22      : ↪
↪ 2012-03-05T14:07:34-06:00 :
.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
```

6.18.2 ipsec detail

ipsec detail

List IPSEC VPN tunnel context details.

Additional resources can be joined using multiple instances of the include option, for which the following choices are available.

- at: address translations
- is: internal subnets
- rs: remote subnets
- sr: statically routed subnets
- ss: service subnets

```
ipsec detail [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

-i, --include <include>
Include additional resources

Options
at | is | rs | sr | ss

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID
Required argument

More detailed information can be retrieved for an individual context using the `ipsec detail` command. Using the detail command, information about associated internal subnets, remote subnets, static subnets, service subnets and address translations may also be retrieved using multiple instances of the `-i | --include` option.

```
$ slcli ipsec detail 445 -i at -i is -i rs -i sr -i ss
Context Details:
:.....:
:              name : value              :
:.....:
:              id : 445                   :
:              name : ipsec038            :
:      friendly name : ipsec tunnel        :
:      internal peer IP address : 173.192.250.79 :
:      remote peer IP address : 158.85.80.22      :
:      advanced configuration flag : 0          :
:              preshared key : secret      :
:      phase 1 authentication : MD5          :
:      phase 1 diffie hellman group : 0          :
:              phase 1 encryption : DES        :
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

:           phase 1 key life : 240 :
:       phase 2 authentication : MD5 :
:   phase 2 diffie hellman group : 1 :
:           phase 2 encryption : DES :
:           phase 2 key life : 240 :
: phase 2 perfect forward secrecy : 1 :
:               created : 2012-03-05T14:07:34-06:00 :
:               modified : 2017-05-17T12:01:33-06:00 :
:.....:.....:
Address Translations:
:.....:.....:
↪.....:
:   id : static IP address : static IP address id : remote IP address : remote IP_
↪address id :      note      :
:.....:.....:
↪.....:
: 15920 :    10.1.249.86    :    9791681    :    158.85.80.22    :    98828    _
↪      : windows server :
: 15918 :    10.1.249.84    :    9791679    :    158.85.80.20    :    98824    _
↪      : unix server   :
:.....:.....:
↪.....:
Internal Subnets:
:.....:.....:
:   id   : network identifier : cidr : note :
:.....:.....:
: 180767 :    10.28.67.128    : 26   :      :
:.....:.....:
Remote Subnets:
:.....:.....:
:   id   : network identifier : cidr : note :
:.....:.....:
: 7852   :    158.85.80.20    : 30   :      :
:.....:.....:
Static Subnets:
:.....:.....:
:   id   : network identifier : cidr : note :
:.....:.....:
: 231807 :    10.1.249.84     : 30   :      :
:.....:.....:
Service Subnets:
:.....:.....:
:   id   : network identifier : cidr : note :
:.....:.....:
: 162079 :    10.0.80.0       : 25   :      :
:.....:.....:

```

6.18.3 ipsec update

ipsec update

Update tunnel context properties.

Updates are made atomically, so either all are accepted or none are.

Key life values must be in the range 120-172800.

Phase 2 perfect forward secrecy must be in the range 0-1.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

`ipsec update [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID`

Options

--friendly-name <friendly_name>

Friendly name value

--remote-peer <remote_peer>

Remote peer IP address value

--preshared-key <preshared_key>

Preshared key value

--phase1-auth, --p1-auth <phase1_auth>

Phase 1 authentication value

Options

MD5 | SHA1 | SHA256

--phase1-crypto, --p1-crypto <phase1_crypto>

Phase 1 encryption value

Options

DES | 3DES | AES128 | AES192 | AES256

--phase1-dh, --p1-dh <phase1_dh>

Phase 1 diffie hellman group value

Options

0 | 1 | 2 | 5

--phase1-key-ttl, --p1-key-ttl <phase1_key_ttl>

Phase 1 key life value

--phase2-auth, --p2-auth <phase2_auth>

Phase 2 authentication value

Options

MD5 | SHA1 | SHA256

--phase2-crypto, --p2-crypto <phase2_crypto>

Phase 2 encryption value

Options

DES | 3DES | AES128 | AES192 | AES256

--phase2-dh, --p2-dh <phase2_dh>

Phase 2 diffie hellman group value

Options

0|1|2|5

--phase2-forward-secrecy, --p2-forward-secrecy <phase2_forward_secrecy>

Phase 2 perfect forward secrecy value

--phase2-key-ttl, --p2-key-ttl <phase2_key_ttl>

Phase 2 key life value

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

Most values listed in the tunnel context detail printout can be modified using the `ipsec update` command. The following is given when executing with the `-h|--help` option and highlights all properties that may be modified.

```
$ slcli ipsec update -h
Usage: slcli ipsec update [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID

Update tunnel context properties.

Updates are made atomically, so either all are accepted or none are.

Key life values must be in the range 120-172800.

Phase 2 perfect forward secrecy must be in the range 0-1.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on
network devices.

Options:
  --friendly-name TEXT           Friendly name value
  --remote-peer TEXT            Remote peer IP address value
  --preshared-key TEXT          Preshared key value
  --p1-auth, --phase1-auth [MD5|SHA1|SHA256]
                                Phase 1 authentication value
  --p1-crypto, --phase1-crypto [DES|3DES|AES128|AES192|AES256]
                                Phase 1 encryption value
  --p1-dh, --phase1-dh [0|1|2|5] Phase 1 diffie hellman group value
  --p1-key-ttl, --phase1-key-ttl INTEGER RANGE
                                Phase 1 key life value
  --p2-auth, --phase2-auth [MD5|SHA1|SHA256]
                                Phase 2 authentication value
  --p2-crypto, --phase2-crypto [DES|3DES|AES128|AES192|AES256]
                                Phase 2 encryption value
  --p2-dh, --phase2-dh [0|1|2|5] Phase 2 diffie hellman group value
  --p2-forward-secrecy, --phase2-forward-secrecy INTEGER RANGE
                                Phase 2 perfect forward secrecy value
  --p2-key-ttl, --phase2-key-ttl INTEGER RANGE
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

`-h, --help``Phase 2 key life value
Show this message and exit.`

6.18.4 ipsec configure

ipsec configure

Request configuration of a tunnel context.

This action will update the `advancedConfigurationFlag` on the context instance and further modifications against the context will be prevented until all changes can be propagated to network devices.

```
ipsec configure [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

A request to configure SoftLayer network devices for a given tunnel context can be issued using the `ipsec configure` command.

Note: Once a configuration request is received, the IPSEC tunnel context will be placed into an unmodifiable state, and further changes against the tunnel context will be prevented. Once configuration changes have been made, the tunnel context may again be modified. The unmodifiable state of a tunnel context is indicated by an *advanced configuration flag* value of 1.

6.18.5 ipsec subnet-add

ipsec subnet-add

Add a subnet to an IPSEC tunnel context.

A subnet id may be specified to link to the existing tunnel context.

Otherwise, a network identifier in CIDR notation should be specified, indicating that a subnet resource should first be created before associating it with the tunnel context. Note that this is only supported for remote subnets, which are also deleted upon failure to attach to a context.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec subnet-add [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

-s, --subnet-id <subnet_id>

Subnet identifier to add

-t, --subnet-type, --type <subnet_type>

Required Subnet type to add

Options

internal | remote | service

-n, --network-identifier, --network <network_identifier>

Subnet network identifier to create

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

Internal, remote and service subnets can be associated to an IPSEC tunnel context using the `ipsec subnet-add` command. Additionally, remote subnets can be created using this same command, which will then be associated to the targeted tunnel context.

Note: The targeted subnet type must be specified. A subnet id must be provided when associating internal and service subnets. Either a subnet id or a network identifier must be provided when associating remote subnets. If a network identifier is provided when associating a remote subnet, that subnet will first be created and then associated to the tunnel context.

The following is an exmaple of associating an internal subnet to a tunnel context.

```
$ slcli ipsec subnet-add 445 --subnet-id 180767 --subnet-type internal
Added internal subnet #180767
```

The following is an example of creating and associating a remote subnet to a tunnel context.

```
$ slcli ipsec subnet-add 445 --subnet-type remote --network 50.100.0.0/26
Created subnet 50.100.0.0/26 #21268
Added remote subnet #21268
```

6.18.6 ipsec subnet-remove

ipsec subnet-remove

Remove a subnet from an IPSEC tunnel context.

The subnet id to remove must be specified.

Remote subnets are deleted upon removal from a tunnel context.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec subnet-remove [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

- s, --subnet-id <subnet_id>**
Required Subnet identifier to remove
- t, --subnet-type, --type <subnet_type>**
Required Subnet type to add

Options

internal | remote | service

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

Internal, remote and service subnets can be disassociated from an IPSEC tunnel context via the `ipsec subnet-remove` command.

Note: The targeted subnet id and type must be specified. When disassociating remote subnets, that subnet record will also be deleted.

The following is an example of disassociating an internal subnet from a tunnel context.

```
$ slcli ipsec subnet-remove 445 --subnet-id 180767 --subnet-type internal
Removed internal subnet #180767
```

6.18.7 ipsec translation-add

ipsec translation-add

Add an address translation to an IPSEC tunnel context.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec translation-add [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

- s, --static-ip <static_ip>**
Required Static IP address value
- r, --remote-ip <remote_ip>**
Required Remote IP address value
- n, --note <note>**
Note value

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

Address translation entries can be added to a tunnel context to provide NAT functionality from a statically routed subnet associated with the tunnel context to a remote subnet. This action is performed with the `ipsec translation-add` command.

Note: Both static and remote IP address values must be specified. An optional note value may also be provided.

The following is an example of adding a new address translation entry.

```
$ slcli ipsec translation-add 445 --static-ip 10.1.249.87 --remote-ip 50.100.0.10 --note
↪ 'email server'
Created translation from 10.1.249.87 to 50.100.0.10 #15922
```

6.18.8 ipsec translation-remove

ipsec translation-remove

Remove a translation entry from an IPSEC tunnel context.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec translation-remove [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

-t, --translation-id <translation_id>

Required Translation identifier to remove

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

Address translation entries can be removed using the `ipsec translation-remove` command.

The following is an example of removing an address translation entry.

```
$ slcli ipsec translation-remove 445 --translation-id 15922
Removed translation #15922
```

6.18.9 ipsec translation-update

ipsec translation-update

Update an address translation for an IPSEC tunnel context.

A separate configuration request should be made to realize changes on network devices.

```
ipsec translation-update [OPTIONS] CONTEXT_ID
```

Options

-t, --translation-id <translation_id>
 Required Translation identifier to update

-s, --static-ip <static_ip>
 Static IP address value

-r, --remote-ip <remote_ip>
 Remote IP address value

-n, --note <note>
 Note value

Arguments

CONTEXT_ID

Required argument

Address translation entries may also be modified using the `ipsec translation-update` command.

The following is an example of updating an existing address translation entry.

```
$ slcli ipsec translation-update 445 --translation-id 15924 --static-ip 10.1.249.86 --  
↪remote-ip 50.100.0.8 --note 'new email server'  
Updated translation #15924
```

ipsec order

Order/create a IPSec VPN tunnel instance.

```
ipsec order [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>
Required Datacenter shortname

ipsec cancel

Cancel a IPSEC VPN tunnel context.

```
ipsec cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--immediate
Cancels the service immediately (instead of on the billing anniversary)

--reason <reason>
An optional cancellation reason. See cancel-reasons for a list of available options

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.19 licenses Commands

6.19.1 licenses create-options

Server order options for a given chassis.

```
licenses create-options [OPTIONS]
```

6.19.2 licenses create

Order/Create License.

```
licenses create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-k, --key <key>

Required The VMware License Key. To get could use the product_package::getItems id=301 with name Software License PackageE.g VMWARE_VSAN_ENTERPRISE_TIER_III_65_124_TB_6_X_2

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Required Datacenter shortname

6.19.3 licenses cancel

Cancel a license.

```
licenses cancel [OPTIONS] KEY
```

Options

--immediate

Immediate cancellation

Arguments

KEY

Required argument

6.20 LoadBalancers

These commands were added in version 5.8.0

6.20.1 LBaaS Commands

- [LBaaS Product](#)
- [LBaaS Documentation](#)

loadbal detail

Get Load Balancer as a Service details.

```
loadbal detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```


Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal list

List active Load Balancer as a Service devices.

```
loadbal list [OPTIONS]
```

loadbal health

Manage LBaaS health checks.

```
loadbal health [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--uuid <uuid>

Required Health check UUID to modify.

-i, --interval <interval>

Seconds between checks. [2-60]

-r, --retry <retry>

Number of times before marking as DOWN. [1-10]

-t, --timeout <timeout>

Seconds to wait for a connection. [1-59]

-u, --url <url>

Url path for HTTP/HTTPS checks.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal member-add

Add a new LBaaS members.

```
loadbal member-add [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--private, --public

Required Private or public IP of the new member.

-m, --member <member>

Required Member IP address.

-w, --weight <weight>

Weight of this member.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal member-del

Remove a LBaaS member.

Member UUID can be found from *slcli lb detail*.

```
loadbal member-del [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-m, --member <member>

Required Member UUID

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal pool-add

Adds a listener to the identifier LB

```
loadbal pool-add [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-P, --frontProtocol <frontprotocol>

Protocol type to use for incoming connections

Default

HTTP

Options

HTTP | HTTPS | TCP

-p, --backProtocol <backprotocol>
Protocol type to use when connecting to backend servers. Defaults to whatever `--frontProtocol` is.

Options

HTTP | HTTPS | TCP

-f, --frontPort <frontport>

Required Internet side port

-b, --backPort <backport>

Required Private side port

-m, --method <method>

Balancing Method

Default

ROUNDROBIN

Options

ROUNDROBIN | LEASTCONNECTION | WEIGHTED_RR

-c, --connections <connections>

Maximum number of connections to allow.

-s, --sticky

Make sessions sticky based on `source_ip`.

-x, --sslCert <sslcert>

SSL certificate ID. See *slcli ssl list*

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal pool-edit

Updates a listener's configuration.

LISTENER should be a UUID, and can be found from *slcli lb detail <IDENTIFIER>*

```
loadbal pool-edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER LISTENER
```

Options

-P, --frontProtocol <frontprotocol>

Protocol type to use for incoming connections

Options

HTTP | HTTPS | TCP

-p, --backProtocol <backprotocol>

Protocol type to use when connecting to backend servers. Defaults to whatever `--frontProtocol` is.

Options

HTTP | HTTPS | TCP

-f, --frontPort <frontport>

Internet side port

-b, --backPort <backport>

Private side port

-m, --method <method>

Balancing Method

Options

ROUNDROBIN | LEASTCONNECTION | WEIGHTED_RR

-c, --connections <connections>

Maximum number of connections to allow.

-t, --clientTimeout <clienttimeout>

maximum idle time in seconds(Range: 1 to 7200).

-s, --sticky

Make sessions sticky based on source_ip.

-x, --sslCert <sslcert>

SSL certificate ID. See *slcli ssl list*

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

LISTENER

Required argument

loadbal pool-del

Removes the listener from identified LBaaS instance

LISTENER should be a UUID, and can be found from *slcli lb detail <IDENTIFIER>*

<code>loadbal pool-del [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER LISTENER</code>

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

LISTENER

Required argument

loadbal l7pool-add

Adds a new l7 pool

-S is in colon delimited format to make grouping IP:port:weight a bit easier.

```
loadbal l7pool-add [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-n, --name <name>

Required Name for this L7 pool.

-m, --method <method>

Balancing Method.

Default

ROUNDROBIN

Options

ROUNDROBIN | LEASTCONNECTION | WEIGHTED_RR

-P, --protocol <protocol>

Protocol type to use for incoming connections

Default

HTTP

Options

HTTP | HTTPS

-S, --server <server>

Required Backend servers that are part of this pool. Format is colon delimited. BACK-END_IP:PORT:WEIGHT. eg. 10.0.0.1:80:50 (multiple occurrence permitted)

--healthPath <healthpath>

Health check path.

Default

/

--healthInterval <healthinterval>

Health check interval between checks.

Default

5

--healthRetry <healthretry>

Health check number of times before marking as DOWN.

Default

2

--healthTimeout <healthtimeout>

Health check timeout.

Default

2

-s, --sticky

Make sessions sticky based on source_ip.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal l7pool-del

Deletes the identified pool

Identifier is L7Pool Id. NOT the UUID

```
loadbal l7pool-del [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal l7policies

List policies of the front-end protocol (listener).

```
loadbal l7policies [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-p, --protocol-id <protocol_id>

Front-end Protocol identifier

loadbal order

Creates a LB. Protocols supported are TCP, HTTP, and HTTPS.

```
loadbal order [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-n, --name <name>

Required Label for this loadbalancer.

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Required Datacenter shortname (dal13).

-l, --label <label>

A descriptive label for this loadbalancer.

-f, --frontend <frontend>

Required PROTOCOL:PORT string for incoming internet connections.

Default

HTTP:80

-b, --backend <backend>

Required PROTOCOL:PORT string for connecting to backend servers.

Default

HTTP:80

-m, --method <method>

Balancing Method.

Default

ROUNDROBIN

Options

ROUNDROBIN | LEASTCONNECTION | WEIGHTED_RR

-s, --subnet <subnet>

Required Private subnet Id to order the LB on. See *slcli lb order-options*

--public

Use a Public to Public loadbalancer.

Default

False

--verify

Only verify an order, dont actually create one.

Default

False

loadbal order-options

Prints options for order a LBaaS

```
loadbal order-options [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Show only selected datacenter, use shortname (dal13) format.

loadbal cancel

Cancels a LBaaS instance

```
loadbal cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.20.2 NetScaler Commands

loadbal ns-detail

Get Netscaler details.

```
loadbal ns-detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

loadbal ns-list

List active Netscaler devices.

```
loadbal ns-list [OPTIONS]
```

6.21 NAS Commands

6.21.1 nas list

List NAS accounts.

```
nas list [OPTIONS]
```


6.21.2 nas credentials

List NAS account credentials.

```
nas credentials [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.22 Object Storage Commands

6.22.1 object-storage accounts

List object storage accounts.

```
object-storage accounts [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--limit <limit>

Result limit

6.22.2 object-storage endpoints

List object storage endpoints.

```
object-storage endpoints [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.22.3 object-storage credential list

Retrieve credentials used for generating an AWS signature. Max of 2.

```
object-storage credential list [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.22.4 object-storage credential limit

Credential limits for this IBM Cloud Object Storage account.

```
object-storage credential limit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.22.5 object-storage credential delete

Delete the credential of an Object Storage Account.

```
object-storage credential delete [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-c, --credential_id <credential_id>

This is the credential id associated with the volume

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.22.6 object-storage credential create

Create credentials for an IBM Cloud Object Storage Account

```
object-storage credential create [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.23 Ordering

The Order *Command-line Interface* commands can be used to build an order for any product in the SoftLayer catalog.

The basic flow for ordering goes something like this...

1. package-list
2. category-list <package key name>
3. item-list <package key name>
4. place <package key name> <item key names> <location>

6.23.1 order package-list

List packages that can be ordered via the placeOrder API.

```
# List out all packages for ordering
slcli order package-list

# List out all packages with "server" in the name
slcli order package-list --keyword server

# Select only specifict package types
slcli order package-list --package_type BARE_METAL_CPU
```

```
order package-list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--keyword <keyword>

A word (or string) used to filter package names.

--package_type <package_type>

The keyname for the type of package. BARE_METAL_CPU for example

Note:

- CLOUD_SERVER: These are Virtual Servers
- BARE_METAL_INSTANCE: Hourly Bare Metal
- BARE_METAL_SERVER: Other monthly server types
- *#_PROC_#_DRIVES*: Packages in this format will contain only this CPU model and Drive bays
- ADDITIONAL_PRODUCTS: Additional IPs, Vlans, SSL certs and other things are in here
- NETWORK_GATEWAY_APPLIANCE: Vyattas

Bluemix services listed here may still need to be ordered through the Bluemix CLI/Portal

6.23.2 order package-locations

List Datacenters a package can be ordered in.
Use the location Key Name to place orders

```
order package-locations [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME
```

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME
Required argument

6.23.3 order category-list

List the categories of a package.

```
# List the categories of Bare Metal servers
slcli order category-list BARE_METAL_SERVER

# List the required categories for Bare Metal servers
slcli order category-list BARE_METAL_SERVER --required
```

```
order category-list [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME
```

Options

--required
List only the required categories for the package

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME
Required argument

Shows all the available categories for a certain package, useful in finding the required categories. Categories that are required will need to have a corresponding item included with any orders

These are all the required categories for BARE_METAL_SERVER

```
$ slcli order category-list BARE_METAL_SERVER
:.....:.....:.....:
:      name      :  categoryCode  : isRequired :
:.....:.....:.....:
:      Server    :      server   :      Y     :
:      Operating System :      os       :      Y     :
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

:	RAM	:	ram	:	Y	:
:	Disk Controller	:	disk_controller	:	Y	:
:	First Hard Drive	:	disk0	:	Y	:
:	Public Bandwidth	:	bandwidth	:	Y	:
:	Uplink Port Speeds	:	port_speed	:	Y	:
:	Remote Management	:	remote_management	:	Y	:
:	Primary IP Addresses	:	pri_ip_addresses	:	Y	:
:	VPN Management - Private Network	:	vpn_management	:	Y	:
:	:	:	:

6.23.4 order item-list

List package items used for ordering.

The item keyNames listed can be used with *slcli order place* to specify the items that are being ordered in the package.

Note: Items with a numbered category, like disk0 or gpu0, can be included multiple times in an order to match how many of the item you want to order.

```
# List all items in the VSI package
slcli order item-list CLOUD_SERVER

# List Ubuntu OSes from the os category of the Bare Metal package
slcli order item-list BARE_METAL_SERVER --category os --keyword ubuntu
```

```
order item-list [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME [LOCATION]
```

Options

-k, --keyword <keyword>

A word (or string) used to filter item names.

-c, --category <category>

Category code to filter items by

-p, --prices

Use `-prices` to list the server item prices, and to list the Item Prices by location, add it to the `-prices` option using location KeyName, e.g. `-prices AMSTERDAM02`

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

Required argument

LOCATION

Optional argument

Shows all the prices for a given package. Collect all the items you want included on your server. Don't forget to include the required category items. If forgotten, `order place` will tell you about it.

6.23.5 order preset-list

List package presets.

Note: Presets are set CPU / RAM / Disk allotments. You still need to specify required items. Some packages do not have presets.

```
# List the presets for Bare Metal servers
slcli order preset-list BARE_METAL_SERVER

# List the Bare Metal server presets that include a GPU
slcli order preset-list BARE_METAL_SERVER --keyword gpu
```

```
order preset-list [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME
```

Options

--keyword <keyword>

A word (or string) used to filter preset names.

-p, --prices

Use `-prices` to list the server item prices, e.g. `-prices`

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

Required argument

6.23.6 order place

Place or verify an order.

1. Find the package keyName from `slcli order package-list`
2. Find the location from `slcli order package-locations PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER`
If the package does not require a location, use 'NONE' instead.
3. Find the needed items `slcli order item-list PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER`
Some packages, like `PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER` need presets, `slcli order preset-list PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER`
4. Find the complex type from <https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference>
5. Use that complex type to fill out any `--extras`

Example:

```
slcli order place --verify --preset B1_2X8X100 --billing hourly
--complex-type SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Virtual_Guest
--extras '{"virtualGuests": [{"hostname": "test", "domain": "ibm.com"}]}'
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER DALLAS13
BANDWIDTH_0_GB_2 MONITORING_HOST_PING NOTIFICATION_EMAIL_AND_TICKET
OS_DEBIAN_9_X_STRETCH_LAMP_64_BIT 1_IP_ADDRESS 1_IPV6_ADDRESS
1_GBPS_PUBLIC_PRIVATE_NETWORK_UPLINKS REBOOT_REMOTE_CONSOLE
AUTOMATED_NOTIFICATION UNLIMITED_SSL_VPN_USERS_1_PPTP_VPN_USER_PER_ACCOUNT
```

```
order place [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME LOCATION [ORDER_ITEMS]...
```

Options

--preset <preset>

The order preset (if required by the package)

--verify

Flag denoting whether or not to only verify the order, not place it

--quantity <quantity>

The quantity of the item being ordered

--billing <billing>

Billing rate

Default

hourly

Options

hourly | monthly

--complex-type <complex_type>

The complex type of the order. Starts with 'SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order'.

--extras <extras>

JSON string denoting extra data that needs to be sent with the order

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

Required argument

LOCATION

Required argument

ORDER_ITEMS

Optional argument(s)

Now that you have the package you want, the prices needed, and found a location, it is time to place an order.

6.23.7 order place <preset>

```
$ slcli --really order place --preset D2620V4_64GB_2X1TB_SATA_RAID_1 BARE_METAL_SERVER \
→TORONTO \
  OS_UBUNTU_16_04_LTS_XENIAL_XERUS_64_BIT \
  BANDWIDTH_0_GB_2 \
  1_GBPS_PRIVATE_NETWORK_UPLINK \
  REBOOT_KVM_OVER_IP 1_IP_ADDRESS \
  UNLIMITED_SSL_VPN_USERS_1_PPTP_VPN_USER_PER_ACCOUNT \
  --extras '{"hardware": [{"hostname": "testOrder", "domain": "cgallo.com"}]}' \
  --complex-type SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Hardware_Server
```

6.23.8 order place <Virtual Server>

```
$ slcli order place --billing hourly CLOUD_SERVER DALLAS13 \
  GUEST_CORES_4 \
  RAM_16_GB \
  REBOOT_REMOTE_CONSOLE \
  1_GBPS_PUBLIC_PRIVATE_NETWORK_UPLINKS \
  BANDWIDTH_0_GB_2 \
  1_IP_ADDRESS \
  GUEST_DISK_100_GB_SAN \
  OS_UBUNTU_16_04_LTS_XENIAL_XERUS_MINIMAL_64_BIT_FOR_VSI \
  MONITORING_HOST_PING \
  NOTIFICATION_EMAIL_AND_TICKET \
  AUTOMATED_NOTIFICATION \
  UNLIMITED_SSL_VPN_USERS_1_PPTP_VPN_USER_PER_ACCOUNT \
  --extras '{"virtualGuests": [{"hostname": "test", "domain": "softlayer.com"}]}' \
  --complex-type SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Virtual_Guest
```

6.24 Quotes

6.24.1 order quote

View and Order a quote

note

The hostname and domain are split out from the fully qualified domain name.

If you want to order multiple servers, you need to specify each FQDN. Postinstall, userdata, and sshkeys are applied to all servers in an order.

```
slcli order quote 12345 --fqdn testing.testers.com \
  --complex-type SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Virtual_Guest -k sshKeyNameLabel\
  -i https://domain.com/runthis.sh --userdata DataGoesHere
```

```
order quote [OPTIONS] QUOTE
```


Options

--verify

If specified, will only show what the quote will order, will NOT place an order

Default

False

--quantity <quantity>

The quantity of the item being ordered if different from quoted value

--complex-type <complex_type>

The complex type of the order. Starts with 'SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order'.

Default

SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Hardware_Server

-u, --userdata <userdata>

User defined metadata string

-F, --userfile <userfile>

Read userdata from file

-i, --postinstall <postinstall>

Post-install script to download

-k, --key <key>

SSH keys to add to the root user (multiple occurrence permitted)

--fqdn <fqdn>

Required <hostname>.<domain.name.tld> formatted name to use. Specify one fqdn per server (multiple occurrence permitted)

--image <image>

Image ID. See: 'slcli image list' for reference

Arguments

QUOTE

Required argument

6.24.2 order quote-list

List all active quotes on an account

```
order quote-list [OPTIONS]
```

6.24.3 order quote-detail

View a quote

```
order quote-detail [OPTIONS] QUOTE
```

Arguments

QUOTE

Required argument

6.24.4 order quote-save

Save a quote

```
order quote-save [OPTIONS] QUOTE
```

Arguments

QUOTE

Required argument

6.24.5 order place-quote

Place a quote.

This CLI command is used for creating a quote of the specified package in the given location (denoted by a data-center's long name). Orders made via the CLI can then be converted to be made programmatically by calling `SoftLayer.OrderingManager.place_quote()` with the same keynames.

Packages for ordering can be retrieved from *slcli order package-list*. Presets for ordering can be retrieved from *slcli order preset-list* (not all packages have presets)

Items can be retrieved from *slcli order item-list*. In order to find required items for the order, use *slcli order category-list*, and then provide the `--category` option for each category code in *slcli order item-list*.

Example:

```
# Place quote a VSI with 4 CPU, 16 GB RAM, 100 GB SAN disk,
# Ubuntu 16.04, and 1 Gbps public & private uplink in dal13
slcli order place-quote --name "foobar" --send-email CLOUD_SERVER DALLAS13 \
    GUEST_CORES_4 \
    RAM_16_GB \
    REBOOT_REMOTE_CONSOLE \
    1_GBPS_PUBLIC_PRIVATE_NETWORK_UPLINKS \
    BANDWIDTH_0_GB_2 \
    1_IP_ADDRESS \
    GUEST_DISK_100_GB_SAN \
    OS_UBUNTU_16_04_LTS_XENIAL_XERUS_MINIMAL_64_BIT_FOR_VSI \
    MONITORING_HOST_PING \
    NOTIFICATION_EMAIL_AND_TICKET \
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

AUTOMATED_NOTIFICATION \
UNLIMITED_SSL_VPN_USERS_1_PPTP_VPN_USER_PER_ACCOUNT \
--extras '{"virtualGuests": [{"hostname": "test", "domain": "softlayer.com"}]}' \
--complex-type SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order_Virtual_Guest

```

```
order place-quote [OPTIONS] PACKAGE_KEYNAME LOCATION [ORDER_ITEMS]...
```

Options

--preset <preset>

The order preset (if required by the package)

--name <name>

A custom name to be assigned to the quote (optional)

--send-email

The quote will be sent to the email address associated with your user.

--complex-type <complex_type>

The complex type of the order. Starts with 'SoftLayer_Container_Product_Order'.

--extras <extras>

JSON string denoting extra data that needs to be sent with the order

Arguments

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

Required argument

LOCATION

Required argument

ORDER_ITEMS

Optional argument(s)

6.25 Lookup

6.25.1 order lookup

Provides some details related to order owner, date order, cost information, initial invoice.

```
order lookup [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--details

Shows a very detailed list of charges

Default

False

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.26 Reports

There are a few report type commands in the SLCLI.

6.26.1 summary

Account summary.

```
summary [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options

datacenter | hardware | virtual_servers | vlans | subnets | public_ips

A list of datacenters, and how many servers, VSI, vlans, subnets and public_ips are in each.

6.26.2 report bandwidth

Bandwidth report for every pool/server.

This reports on the total data transfered for each virtual sever, hardware server and bandwidth pool.

```
report bandwidth [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- start** <start>
datetime in the format 'YYYY-MM-DD' or 'YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS'
- end** <end>
datetime in the format 'YYYY-MM-DD' or 'YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS'
- sortby** <sortby>
Column to sort by
Default
hostname
- virtual**
Show only the bandwidth summary for each virtual server
- server**
Show only the bandwidth summary for each hardware server
- pool**
Show only the bandwidth pool summary.

6.26.3 report datacenter-closures

Report on Resources in closing datacenters

Displays a list of Datacenters soon to be shutdown, and any resources on the account in those locations

```
report datacenter-closures [OPTIONS]
```

Displays some basic information about the Servers and other resources that are in Datacenters scheduled to be decommissioned in the near future. See [IBM Cloud Datacenter Consolidation](#) for more information

6.27 Security Groups

6.27.1 securitygroup list

List security groups.

```
securitygroup list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- sortby** <sortby>
Column to sort by
Options
id | name | description

-l, --limit <limit>

How many results to get in one api call, default is 100

Default

100

6.27.2 securitygroup detail

Get details about a security group.

```
securitygroup detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.27.3 securitygroup create

Create a security group.

```
securitygroup create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-n, --name <name>

The name of the security group

-d, --description <description>

The description of the security group

6.27.4 securitygroup edit

Edit details of a security group.

```
securitygroup edit [OPTIONS] GROUP_ID
```

Options

-n, --name <name>

The name of the security group

-d, --description <description>

The description of the security group

Arguments

GROUP_ID

Required argument

6.27.5 securitygroup delete

Deletes the given security group

```
securitygroup delete [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID

Required argument

6.27.6 securitygroup rule-list

List security group rules.

```
securitygroup rule-list [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options

id | remoteIp | remoteGroupId | direction | ethertype | portRangeMin | portRangeMax | protocol |
createDate | modifyDate

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID

Required argument

6.27.7 securitygroup rule-add

Add a security group rule to a security group.

Examples:

```
# Add an SSH rule (TCP port 22) to a security group
slcli sg rule-add 384727
    -direction ingress
    -protocol tcp
    -port-min 22
```

```
-port-max 22
```

```
# Add a ping rule (ICMP type 8 code 0) to a security group
slcli sg rule-add 384727
    -direction ingress
    -protocol icmp
    -port-min 8
    -port-max 0
```

```
securitygroup rule-add [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Options

-r, --remote-ip <remote_ip>
The remote IP/CIDR to enforce

-s, --remote-group <remote_group>
The ID of the remote security group to enforce

-d, --direction <direction>
The direction of traffic to enforce (ingress, egress)

-e, --ethertype <ethertype>
The ethertype (IPv4 or IPv6) to enforce

-M, --port-max <port_max>
The upper port bound to enforce. When the protocol is ICMP, this specifies the ICMP code to permit

-m, --port-min <port_min>
The lower port bound to enforce. When the protocol is ICMP, this specifies the ICMP type to permit

-p, --protocol <protocol>
The protocol (icmp, tcp, udp) to enforce

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID
Required argument

6.27.8 securitygroup rule-edit

Edit a security group rule in a security group.

```
securitygroup rule-edit [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID RULE_ID
```


Options

- r, --remote-ip** <remote_ip>
The remote IP/CIDR to enforce
- s, --remote-group** <remote_group>
The ID of the remote security group to enforce
- d, --direction** <direction>
The direction of traffic to enforce
- e, --ethertype** <ethertype>
The ethertype (IPv4 or IPv6) to enforce
- M, --port-max** <port_max>
The upper port bound to enforce
- m, --port-min** <port_min>
The lower port bound to enforce
- p, --protocol** <protocol>
The protocol (icmp, tcp, udp) to enforce

Arguments

- SECURITYGROUP_ID**
Required argument
- RULE_ID**
Required argument

6.27.9 securitygroup rule-remove

Remove a rule from a security group.

`securitygroup rule-remove [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID RULE_ID`

Arguments

- SECURITYGROUP_ID**
Required argument
- RULE_ID**
Required argument

6.27.10 securitygroup interface-list

List interfaces associated with security groups.

```
securitygroup interface-list [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options

networkComponentId | virtualServerId | hostname | interface | ipAddress

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID

Required argument

6.27.11 securitygroup interface-add

Attach an interface to a security group.

```
securitygroup interface-add [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Options

-n, --network-component <network_component>

The network component to associate with the security group

-s, --server <server>

The server ID to associate with the security group

-i, --interface <interface>

The interface of the server to associate (public/private)

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID

Required argument

6.27.12 securitygroup interface-remove

Detach an interface from a security group.

```
securitygroup interface-remove [OPTIONS] SECURITYGROUP_ID
```

Options

- n, --network-component** <network_component>
The network component to remove from with the security group
- s, --server** <server>
The server ID to remove from the security group
- i, --interface** <interface>
The interface of the server to remove (public/private)

Arguments

SECURITYGROUP_ID
Required argument

6.27.13 securitygroup event-log

Search for event logs by request id

```
securitygroup event-log [OPTIONS] REQUEST_ID
```

Arguments

REQUEST_ID
Required argument

6.28 SSH Keys

6.28.1 sshkey add

Add a new SSH key.

```
sshkey add [OPTIONS] LABEL
```

Options

- f, --in-file <in_file>**
The id_rsa.pub file to import for this key
- k, --key <key>**
The actual SSH key
- note <note>**
Extra note that will be associated with key

Arguments

- LABEL**
Required argument

6.28.2 sshkey remove

Permanently removes an SSH key.

```
sshkey remove [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

- IDENTIFIER**
Required argument

6.28.3 sshkey edit

Edits an SSH key.

```
sshkey edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- k, --label <label>**
The new label for the key
- note <note>**
New notes for the key

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.28.4 sshkey list

List SSH keys.

```
sshkey list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options

id | label | fingerprint | notes

6.28.5 sshkey print

Prints out an SSH key to the screen.

```
sshkey print [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-f, --out-file <out_file>

The public SSH key will be written to this file

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.29 SSL Certificates

6.29.1 ssl add

Add and upload SSL certificate details.

```
ssl add [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- crt** <crt>
Certificate file
- csr** <csr>
Certificate Signing Request file
- icc** <icc>
Intermediate Certificate file
- key** <key>
Private Key file
- notes** <notes>
Additional notes

6.29.2 ssl download

Download SSL certificate and key file.

```
ssl download [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

- IDENTIFIER**
Required argument

6.29.3 ssl edit

Edit SSL certificate.

```
ssl edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- crt** <crt>
Certificate file
- csr** <csr>
Certificate Signing Request file
- icc** <icc>
Intermediate Certificate file
- key** <key>
Private Key file
- notes** <notes>
Additional notes

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.29.4 ssl list

List SSL certificates.

```
ssl list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--status <status>

Show certificates with this status

Default

all

Options

all | valid | expired

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options

id | common_name | days_until_expire | notes

6.29.5 ssl remove

Remove SSL certificate.

```
ssl remove [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.30 Subnets

6.30.1 subnet cancel

Cancel a subnet.

```
subnet cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.30.2 subnet create

Add a new subnet to your account. Valid quantities vary by type.

IPv4

static - 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256

public - 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256

private - 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256

IPv6

static - 64

public - 64

endpoint-id

static - Network_Subnet_IpAddress identifier.

public - Network_Vlan identifier

private - Network_Vlan identifier

```
subnet create [OPTIONS] {static|public|private} QUANTITY ENDPOINT_ID
```

Options

--ipv6, --v6

Order IPv6 Addresses

--test

Do not order the subnet; just get a quote

Arguments

NETWORK

Required argument

QUANTITY

Required argument

ENDPOINT_ID

Required argument

6.30.3 subnet detail

Get subnet details.

```
subnet detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--no-vs

Hide virtual server listing

--no-hardware

Hide hardware listing

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.30.4 subnet edit

Edit note and tags of a subnet.

```
subnet edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-t, --tags <tags>

Comma separated list of tags, enclosed in quotes. "tag1, tag2"

-n, --note <note>

The note

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.30.5 subnet list

List subnets.

```
subnet list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options

id | identifier | type | network_space | datacenter | vlan_id | IPs | hardware | vs

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Filter by datacenter shortname (sng01, dal05, ...)

--identifier <identifier>

Filter by network identifier

-t, --subnet-type <subnet_type>

Filter by subnet type

--network-space <network_space>

Filter by network space

--ipv4, --v4

Display only IPv4 subnets

--ipv6, --v6

Display only IPv6 subnets

6.30.6 subnet lookup

Find an IP address and display its subnet and device info.

```
subnet lookup [OPTIONS] IP_ADDRESS
```

Arguments

IP_ADDRESS

Required argument

6.30.7 subnet edit-ip

Set the note of the ipAddress

```
subnet edit-ip [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--note <note>
set ip address note of subnet

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.30.8 subnet route

Assigns the subnet to a target.

```
subnet route [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--target <target>
choose the type. vlan, ip, hardware, vsi

Options
vlan | ip | hardware | vsi

--target-id <target_id>
The identifier for the destination resource to route this subnet to.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

More information about types and identifiers on https://sldn.softlayer.com/reference/services/SoftLayer_Network_Subnet/route/

6.30.9 subnet clear-route

Remove the route of your Account Owned subnets.

```
subnet clear-route [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.31 Tag Commands

These commands will allow you to interact with the **IMS** provier tagging service. The [IBM Global Search and Tagging API](#) can be used to interact with both the **GHOST** provider and **IMS** provider. The **GHOST** provider will handle tags for things outside of the Classic Infrastructure (aka SoftLayer) space.

6.31.1 tags list

List Tags.

```
tags list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --detail

Show information about the resources using this tag.

6.31.2 tags set

Set Tags.

```
tags set [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-t, --tags <tags>

Required Comma seperated list of tags, enclosed in quotes. "tag1, tag2"

-k, --key-name <key_name>

Required Key name of a tag type e.g. GUEST, HARDWARE. See slcli tags taggable output.

-r, --resource-id <resource_id>

Required ID of the object being tagged

6.31.3 tags details

Get details for a Tag. Identifier can be either a name or tag-id

```
tags details [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--name

Assume identifier is a tag name. Useful if your tag name is a number.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.31.4 tags delete

Delete a Tag. Tag names that contain spaces need to be encased in quotes

```
tags delete [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--name

Assume identifier is a tag name. Useful if your tag name is a number.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.31.5 tags taggable

List everything that could be tagged.

```
tags taggable [OPTIONS]
```

6.31.6 tags cleanup

Removes all empty tags.

```
tags cleanup [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-d, --dry-run

Don't delete, just show what will be deleted.

6.32 Support Tickets

The SoftLayer ticket API is used to create “classic” or Infrastructure Support cases. These tickets will still show up in your web portal, but for the more unified case management API, see the [Case Management API](#)

Note: Windows Git-Bash users might run into issues with *ticket create* and *ticket update* if `-body` isn't used, as it doesn't report that it is a real TTY to python, so the default editor can not be launched.

6.32.1 ticket create

Create a Infrastructure support ticket.

Will create the ticket with *Some text*..

```
slcli ticket create --body="Some text" --subject-id 1522 --hardware 12345 --title "My
↪New Ticket"
```

Will create the ticket with text from STDIN:

```
cat sometfile.txt | slcli ticket create --subject-id 1003 --virtual 111111 --title
↪"Reboot Me"
```

Will open the default text editor, and once closed, use that text to create the ticket:

```
slcli ticket create --subject-id 1482 --title "Vyatta Questions..."
```

```
ticket create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--title <title>

Required The title of the ticket

--subject-id <subject_id>

Required The subject id to use for the ticket, run ‘slcli ticket subjects’ to get the list

--body <body>

The ticket body

--hardware <hardware_identifier>

The identifier for hardware to attach

--virtual <virtual_identifier>

The identifier for a virtual server to attach

--priority <priority>

Ticket priority, from 1 (Critical) to 4 (Minimal Impact). Only settable with Advanced and Premium support. See <https://www.ibm.com/cloud/support>

Options

1 | 2 | 3 | 4

6.32.2 ticket detail

Get details for a ticket.

```
ticket detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--count <count>

Number of updates

Default

10

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.32.3 ticket list

List tickets.

```
ticket list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--open, **--closed**

Display only open or closed tickets

6.32.4 ticket update

Adds an update to an existing ticket.

Will update the ticket with *Some text*..

```
slcli ticket update 123456 --body="Some text"
```

Will update the ticket with text from STDIN:

```
cat sometfile.txt | slcli ticket update 123456
```

Will open the default text editor, and once closed, use that text to update the ticket:

```
slcli ticket update 123456
```

```
ticket update [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--body <body>

Text to add to the ticket. STDIN or the default text editor will be used otherwise.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.32.5 ticket upload

Adds an attachment to an existing ticket.

```
ticket upload [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--path <path>

The path of the attachment to be uploaded

--name <name>

The name of the attachment shown in the ticket

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.32.6 ticket subjects

List Subject IDs for ticket creation.

```
ticket subjects [OPTIONS]
```

6.32.7 ticket summary

Summary info about tickets.

```
ticket summary [OPTIONS]
```

6.32.8 ticket attach

Attach devices to a ticket.

```
ticket attach [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--hardware <hardware_identifier>

The identifier for hardware to attach

--virtual <virtual_identifier>

The identifier for a virtual server to attach

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.32.9 ticket detach

Detach devices from a ticket.

```
ticket detach [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- hardware** <hardware_identifier>
The identifier for hardware to detach
- virtual** <virtual_identifier>
The identifier for a virtual server to detach

Arguments

IDENTIFIER
Required argument

6.33 Users

Version 5.6.0 introduces the ability to interact with user accounts from the cli.

6.33.1 user list

List Users.

```
user list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

- columns** <columns>
Columns to display. [options: id, username, email, displayName, status, hardwareCount, virtualGuestCount, 2FA, classicAPIKey]
- Default**
id,username,email,displayName,2FA,classicAPIKey

6.33.2 user detail

User details.

```
user detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

- k, --keys**
Show the users API key.
- p, --permissions**
Display permissions assigned to this user. Master users will show no permissions
- h, --hardware**
Display hardware this user has access to.

-v, --virtual

Display virtual guests this user has access to.

-l, --logins

Show login history of this user for the last 30 days

-e, --events

Show event log for this user.

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.33.3 user notifications

My Notifications.

```
user notifications [OPTIONS]
```

6.33.4 user permissions

User Permissions.

```
user permissions [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.33.5 user edit-notifications

Enable or Disable specific notifications for the active user.

Notification names should be enclosed in quotation marks. Example:

```
slcli user edit-notifications --enable 'Order Approved' 'Reload Complete'
```

```
user edit-notifications [OPTIONS] NOTIFICATION...
```

Options

--enable, --disable

Enable (DEFAULT) or Disable selected notification

Arguments

NOTIFICATION

Required argument(s)

6.33.6 user edit-permissions

Enable or Disable specific permissions.

```
user edit-permissions [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--enable, --disable

Enable (DEFAULT) or Disable selected permissions

-p, --permission <permission>

Permission keyName to set, multiple instances allowed. Use keyword ALL to select ALL permissions

-u, --from-user <from_user>

Set permissions to match this user's permissions. Will add then remove the appropriate permissions

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.33.7 user edit-details

Edit a Users details

JSON strings should be enclosed in ‘ and each item should be enclosed in “”

Example:

```
slcli user edit-details testUser -t '{"firstName": "Test", "lastName": "Testerson"}'
```

```
user edit-details [OPTIONS] USER
```

Options

-t, --template <template>

Required A json string describing https://softlayer.github.io/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_User_Customer/

Arguments

USER

Required argument

6.33.8 user create

Creates a user Users.

Remember to set the permissions and access for this new user.

Example:

```
slcli user create my@email.com -e my@email.com -p generate -a
-t '{"firstName": "Test", "lastName": "Testerson"}'
```

```
user create [OPTIONS] USERNAME
```

Options

-e, --email <email>

Required Email address for this user. Required for creation.

-p, --password <password>

Password to set for this user. If no password is provided, user will be sent an email to generate one, which expires in 24 hours. '-p generate' will create a password for you (Requires Python 3.6+). Passwords require 8+ characters, upper and lowercase, a number and a symbol.

-u, --from-user <from_user>

Base user to use as a template for creating this user. Will default to the user running this command. Information provided in --template supersedes this template.

-t, --template <template>

A json string describing https://softlayer.github.io/reference/datatypes/SoftLayer_User_Customer/

Arguments

USERNAME

Required argument

6.33.9 user delete

Sets a user's status to CANCEL_PENDING, which will immediately disable the account, and will eventually be fully removed from the account by an automated internal process.

Example: `slcli user delete userId`

```
user delete [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.33.10 user device-access

User Device access.

```
user device-access [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.33.11 user vpn-manual

Enable or disable user vpn subnets manual config

```
user vpn-manual [OPTIONS] USER
```

Options

--enable, --disable

Enable or disable vpn subnets manual config.

Arguments

USER

Required argument

6.33.12 user vpn-subnet

Add or remove subnets access for a user.

```
user vpn-subnet [OPTIONS] USER SUBNET...
```

Options

--add, --remove

Add or remove access to subnets.

Arguments

USER

Required argument

SUBNET

Required argument(s)

6.33.13 user remove-access

Remove access from a user to an specific device.

Example: `slcli user remove-access 123456 --hardware 123456789`

```
user remove-access [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-h, --hardware <hardware>

Display hardware this user has access to.

-v, --virtual <virtual>

Display virtual guests this user has access to.

-l, --dedicated <dedicated>

dedicated host ID

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.34 VLANs

6.34.1 vlan create

Order/create a VLAN instance.

Example:

```
slcli vlan create --name myvlan --datacenter dal13 or slcli vlan create --name myvlan --pod dal10.pod01
```

```
vlan create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--name <name>

Vlan name

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Datacenter shortname

-p, --pod <pod>

Pod name. E.g dal05.pod01

--network <network>

Network vlan type

Default

public

Options

public | private

--billing <billing>

Billing rate

Default

hourly

Options

hourly | monthly

6.34.2 vlan create-options

List all the options for creating VLAN

```
vlan create-options [OPTIONS]
```


6.34.3 vlan detail

Get details about a VLAN.

```
vlan detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--no-vs

Hide virtual server listing

--no-hardware

Hide hardware listing

--no-trunks

Hide devices with trunks

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.34.4 vlan edit

Edit a vlan's details.

```
vlan edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-n, --name <name>

The optional name for this VLAN

-e, --note <note>

The note for this vlan.

-g, --tags <tags>

Tags to set e.g. "tag1,tag2", or empty string to remove all

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.34.5 vlan list

List VLANs.

Note: A * Indicates a POD is closing soon. Ex:[red] Pod01* [/red]

```
vlan list [OPTIONS]
```

Options

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Options

Id | Number | Fully qualified name | Name | Network | Data center | Pod | Gateway/Firewall |
Hardware | Virtual servers | Public ips | Premium | Tags

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Filter by datacenter shortname (sng01, dal05, ...)

-n, --number <number>

Filter by VLAN number

--name <name>

Filter by VLAN name

-l, --limit <limit>

How many results to get in one api call, default is 100

Default

100

6.34.6 vlan cancel

Cancel network VLAN.

```
vlan cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35 Working with Virtual Servers

Using the SoftLayer portal to order virtual servers is fine, but for a number of reasons it's often more convenient to use the command line. For this, you can use SoftLayer's command-line client to make administrative tasks quicker and easier. This page gives an intro to working with SoftLayer virtual servers using SoftLayer's command-line client.

Note: The following assumes that the client is already *configured with valid SoftLayer credentials*.

First, let's list the current virtual servers with `slcli vs list`.

```
$ slcli vs list
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
: id : datacenter :      host      : cores : memory : primary_ip : backend_
↪ip : active_transaction : owner  :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
```

We don't have any virtual servers yet! Let's fix that. Before we can create a virtual server (VS), we need to know what options are available to us: RAM, CPU, operating systems, disk sizes, disk types, datacenters, and so on. Luckily, there's a simple command to show all options: `slcli vs create-options`.

Some values were omitted for brevity

```
$ slcli vs create-options
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
:      name : value
↪      :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪.....:
:      datacenter : ams01
↪      :
:      : ams03
↪      :
:      : wdc07
↪      :
: flavors (balanced) : B1_1X2X25
↪      :
:      : B1_1X2X25
↪      :
:      : B1_1X2X100
↪      :
:      cpus (standard) : 1,2,4,8,12,16,32,56
↪      :
:      cpus (dedicated) : 1,2,4,8,16,32,56
↪      :
:      cpus (dedicated host) : 1,2,4,8,12,16,32,56
↪      :
:      memory : 1024,2048,4096,6144,8192,12288,16384,32768,49152,
↪65536,131072,247808
:      memory (dedicated host) : 1024,2048,4096,6144,8192,12288,16384,32768,49152,
↪65536,131072,247808
:      os (CENTOS) : CENTOS_5_64
↪      :
:      : CENTOS_LATEST_64
↪      :
:      os (CLOUDINUX) : CLOUDINUX_5_64
↪      :
:      : CLOUDINUX_6_64
↪      :
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

→      :
:      : CLOUDLINUX_LATEST
→      :
:      : CLOUDLINUX_LATEST_64
→      :
:      os (COREOS) : COREOS_CURRENT_64
→      :
:      : COREOS_LATEST
→      :
:      : COREOS_LATEST_64
→      :
:      os (DEBIAN) : DEBIAN_6_64
→      :
:      : DEBIAN_LATEST_64
→      :
:      os (OTHERUNIXLINUX) : OTHERUNIXLINUX_1_64
→      :
:      : OTHERUNIXLINUX_LATEST
→      :
:      : OTHERUNIXLINUX_LATEST_64
→      :
:      os (REDHAT) : REDHAT_5_64
→      :
:      : REDHAT_6_64
→      :
:      : REDHAT_7_64
→      :
:      : REDHAT_LATEST
→      :
:      : REDHAT_LATEST_64
→      :
:      san disk(0) : 25,100
→      :
:      san disk(2) : 10,20,25,30,40,50,75,100,125,150,175,200,250,300,350,
→ 400,500,750,1000,1500,2000 :
:      local disk(0) : 25,100
→      :
:      local disk(2) : 25,100,150,200,300
→      :
: local (dedicated host) disk(0) : 25,100
→      :
:      nic (dedicated host) : 100,1000
→      :
: .....: .....
→ .....:

```

Here's the command to create a 2-core virtual server with 1GiB memory, running Ubuntu 14.04 LTS, and that is billed on an hourly basis in the San Jose 1 datacenter using the command *slcli vs create*.

```

$ slcli vs create --hostname=example --domain=softlayer.com -f B1_1X2X25 -o DEBIAN_
→ LATEST_64 --datacenter=ams01 --billing=hourly
This action will incur charges on your account. Continue? [y/N]: y

```

(continues on next page)

Warning: Be careful when using the `--passwords` flag. This will print the virtual server's password on the screen. Make sure no one is looking over your shoulder. It's also advisable to change your root password soon after creating your virtual server, or to create a user with sudo access and disable SSH-based login directly to the root account.

```
$ slcli vs detail example --passwords
:.....:
:      Name : Value      :
:.....:
:      id   : 1234567     :
:  hostname : example.softlayer.com :
:   status  : Active      :
:   state   : Running     :
: datacenter : ams01         :
:   cores   : 2           :
:  memory   : 1G          :
: public_ip : 108.168.200.11    :
: private_ip : 10.54.80.200    :
:   os      : Debian      :
: private_only : False      :
: private_cpu : False      :
:   created  : 2013-06-13T08:29:44-06:00 :
:   modified : 2013-06-13T08:31:57-06:00 :
:   users    : root ABCDEFGH :
:.....:
```

6.35.1 virtual bandwidth

Bandwidth data over date range. Bandwidth is listed in GB

Using just a date might get you times off by 1 hour, use T00:01 to get just the specific days data Timezones can also be included with the YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss.000000-HH:mm format.

Due to some rounding and date alignment details, results here might be slightly different than results in the control portal.

Example:

```
slcli vs bandwidth 1234 -s 2019-05-01T00:01 -e 2019-05-02T00:00:01.000000-12:00
```

```
virtual bandwidth [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-s, --start_date <start_date>

Required Start Date YYYY-MM-DD, YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss,

-e, --end_date <end_date>

Required End Date YYYY-MM-DD, YYYY-MM-DDTHH:mm:ss

-p, --summary_period <summary_period>

300, 600, 1800, 3600, 43200 or 86400 seconds

Default

3600

-q, --quite_summary

Only show the summary table

Default

False

Arguments**IDENTIFIER**

Required argument

If no timezone is specified, IMS local time (CST) will be assumed, which might not match your user's selected timezone.

6.35.2 virtual cancel

Cancel virtual servers.

```
virtual cancel [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments**IDENTIFIER**

Required argument

6.35.3 virtual capture

Capture one or all disks from a virtual server to a SoftLayer image.

```
virtual capture [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options**-n, --name <name>****Required** Name of the image**--all <all>**

Capture all disks belonging to the VS

--note <note>

Add a note to be associated with the image

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.4 virtual create

Order/create virtual servers.

```
virtual create [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-H, --hostname <hostname>

Required Host portion of the FQDN

-D, --domain <domain>

Required Domain portion of the FQDN

-c, --cpu <cpu>

Number of CPU cores (not available with flavors)

-m, --memory <memory>

Memory in mebibytes (not available with flavors)

-f, --flavor <flavor>

Public Virtual Server flavor key name

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Required Datacenter shortname

-o, --os <os>

OS install code. Tip: you can specify <OS>_LATEST

--image <image>

Image ID. See: 'slcli image list' for reference

--boot-mode <boot_mode>

Specify the mode to boot the OS in. Supported modes are HVM and PV.

--billing <billing>

Billing rate

Default

hourly

Options

hourly | monthly

--dedicated, --public

Create a Dedicated Virtual Server

--host-id <host_id>

Host Id to provision a Dedicated Host Virtual Server onto

--san
Use SAN storage instead of local disk.

--test
Do not actually create the virtual server

--export <export>
Exports options to a template file

-i, --postinstall <postinstall>
Post-install script to download

-k, --key <key>
SSH keys to add to the root user (multiple occurrence permitted)

--disk <disk>
Disk sizes (multiple occurrence permitted)

--private
Forces the VS to only have access the private network

--like <like>
Use the configuration from an existing VS

-n, --network <network>
Network port speed in Mbps

-g, --tag <tag>
Tags to add to the instance (multiple occurrence permitted)

-t, --template <template>
A template file that defaults the command-line options

-u, --userdata <userdata>
User defined metadata string

-F, --userfile <userfile>
Read userdata from file

--vlan-public <vlan_public>
The ID of the public VLAN on which you want the virtual server placed

--vlan-private <vlan_private>
The ID of the private VLAN on which you want the virtual server placed

--subnet-public <subnet_public>
The ID of the public SUBNET on which you want the virtual server placed

--subnet-private <subnet_private>
The ID of the private SUBNET on which you want the virtual server placed

--router-public <router_public>
The ID of the public ROUTER on which you want the virtual server placed

--router-private <router_private>
The ID of the private ROUTER on which you want the virtual server placed

-S, --public-security-group <public_security_group>
Security group ID to associate with the public interface (multiple occurrence permitted)

-s, --private-security-group <private_security_group>
Security group ID to associate with the private interface (multiple occurrence permitted)

--wait <wait>
Wait until VS is finished provisioning for up to X seconds before returning

--placementgroup <placementgroup>
Placement Group name or Id to order this guest on. See: `slcli vs placementgroup list`

--ipv6
Adds an IPv6 address to this guest

--transient
Create a transient virtual server

See 'slcli vs create-options' for valid options

6.35.5 virtual create-options

Virtual server order options.

`virtual create-options [OPTIONS] [LOCATION]`

Options

--vsi-type <vsi_type>
VS keyName type.

Default
PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER

Options
PUBLIC_CLOUD_SERVER | TRANSIENT_CLOUD_SERVER | SUS-
PEND_CLOUD_SERVER | CLOUD_SERVER

-p, --prices
Use `--prices` to list the server item prices, and to list the Item Prices by location, add it to the `--prices` option using location short name, e.g. `--prices dal13`

Arguments

LOCATION
Optional argument

6.35.6 virtual dns-sync

Sync DNS records.

```
virtual dns-sync [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-a, --a-record

Sync the A record for the host

--aaaa-record

Sync the AAAA record for the host

--ptr

Sync the PTR record for the host

--ttl <ttl>

Sets the TTL for the A and/or PTR records

Default

7200

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

If you don't specify any arguments, it will attempt to update both the A and PTR records. If you don't want to update both records, you may use the -a or -ptr arguments to limit the records updated.

6.35.7 virtual edit

Edit a virtual server's details.

```
virtual edit [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-D, --domain <domain>

Domain portion of the FQDN

-H, --hostname <hostname>

Host portion of the FQDN. example: server

-g, --tag <tag>

Tags to set or empty string to remove all

-u, --userdata <userdata>

User defined metadata string

-F, --userfile <userfile>

Read userdata from file

--public-speed <public_speed>

Public port speed.

Options

0 | 10 | 100 | 1000 | 10000

--private-speed <private_speed>

Private port speed.

Options

0 | 10 | 100 | 1000 | 10000

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.8 virtual list

List virtual servers.

`virtual list [OPTIONS]`

Options

-c, --cpu <cpu>

Number of CPU cores

-D, --domain <domain>

Domain portion of the FQDN

-d, --datacenter <datacenter>

Datacenter shortname

-H, --hostname <hostname>

Host portion of the FQDN

-m, --memory <memory>

Memory in mebibytes

-n, --network <network>

Network port speed in Mbps

--hourly

Show only hourly instances

--monthly

Show only monthly instances

--transient <transient>

Filter by transient instances

--hardware

Show the all VSI related to hardware

--all-guests

Show the all VSI and hardware VSIs

--tag <tag>

Filter by tags (multiple occurrence permitted)

--sortby <sortby>

Column to sort by

Default

hostname

--columns <columns>

Columns to display. [options: guid, primary_ip, backend_ip, datacenter, action, power_state, created_by, tags]

Default

id,hostname,domain,deviceStatus.name,datacenter,primary_ip,backend_ip,createDate,action

-l, --limit <limit>

How many results to get in one api call, default is 100

Default

100

6.35.9 virtual pause

Pauses an active virtual server.

```
virtual pause [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.10 virtual power-on

Power on a virtual server.

```
virtual power-on [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.11 virtual power-off

Power off an active virtual server.

```
virtual power-off [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--hard, --soft

Perform a hard shutdown

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.12 virtual resume

Resumes a paused virtual server.

```
virtual resume [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.13 virtual rescue

Reboot into a rescue image.

```
virtual rescue [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.14 virtual reboot

Reboot an active virtual server.

```
virtual reboot [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--hard, --soft

Perform a hard or soft reboot

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.15 virtual ready

Check if a virtual server is ready.

```
virtual ready [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--wait <wait>

Seconds to wait

Default

0

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.16 virtual upgrade

Upgrade a virtual server.

```
virtual upgrade [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--cpu <cpu>

Number of CPU cores

--private

CPU core will be on a dedicated host server.

--memory <memory>

Memory in megabytes

--network <network>

Network port speed in Mbps

--add-disk <add_disk>

add Hard disk in GB

--resize-disk <resize_disk>

Update disk number to size in GB. `--resize-disk 250 2`

--flavor <flavor>

Flavor keyName Do not use `--memory`, `--cpu` or `--private`, if you are using flavors

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

Note: SoftLayer automatically reboots the VS once upgrade request is placed. The VS is halted until the Upgrade transaction is completed. However for Network, no reboot is required.

6.35.17 virtual usage

Usage information of a virtual server.

```
virtual usage [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-s, --start_date <start_date>

Required Start Date e.g. 2019-3-4 (yyyy-MM-dd)

-e, --end_date <end_date>

Required End Date e.g. 2019-4-2 (yyyy-MM-dd)

-t, --valid_type <valid_type>

Required Metric_Data_Type keyName e.g. CPU0, CPU1, MEMORY_USAGE, etc.

-p, --summary_period <summary_period>

300, 600, 1800, 3600, 43200 or 86400 seconds

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.18 virtual storage

Get storage details for a virtual server.

```
virtual storage [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.19 virtual billing

Get billing for a virtual device.

```
virtual billing [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.20 virtual detail

Get details for a virtual server.

```
virtual detail [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

--passwords

Show passwords (check over your shoulder!)

--price

Show associated prices

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.21 virtual reload

Reload operating system on a virtual server.

```
virtual reload [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-i, --postinstall <postinstall>

Post-install script to download

--image <image>

Image ID. The default is to use the current operating system. See: ‘slcli image list’ for reference

-k, --key <key>

SSH keys to add to the root user (multiple occurrence permitted)

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.22 virtual credentials

List virtual server credentials.

```
virtual credentials [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.23 virtual migrate

Manage VSIs that require migration. Can migrate Dedicated Host VSIs as well.

```
virtual migrate [OPTIONS]
```

Options

-g, --guest <guest>

Guest ID to immediately migrate.

-a, --all

Migrate ALL guests that require migration immediately.

-h, --host <host>

Dedicated Host ID to migrate to. Only works on guests that are already on a dedicated host.

6.35.24 virtual authorize-storage

Authorize File, Block and Portable Storage to a Virtual Server.

```
virtual authorize-storage [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Options

-u, --username-storage <username_storage>

The storage username to be added to the virtual server

--portable-id <portable_id>

The portable storage id to be added to the virtual server

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.25 virtual monitoring

Get details for a vsi monitors device.

```
virtual monitoring [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

6.35.26 virtual access

Get user access details a virtual server.

```
virtual access [OPTIONS] IDENTIFIER
```

Arguments

IDENTIFIER

Required argument

Manages the migration of virtual guests. Supports migrating virtual guests on Dedicated Hosts as well.

6.35.27 Reserved Capacity

Working with Reserved Capacity

There are two main concepts for Reserved Capacity. The [Reserved Capacity Group](#) and the [Reserved Capacity Instance](#). The Reserved Capacity Group, is a set block of capacity set aside for you at the time of the order. It will contain a set number of Instances which are all the same size. Instances can be ordered like normal VSIs, with the exception that you need to include the reservedCapacityGroupId, and it must be the same size as the group you are ordering the instance in.

- [About Reserved Capacity](#)
- [Reserved Capacity FAQ](#)

The SLCLI supports some basic Reserved Capacity Features.

vs capacity create

This command will create a Reserved Capacity Group.

Warning: These groups can not be canceled until their contract expires in 1 or 3 years!

```
$ slcli vs capacity create --name test-capacity -d dal13 -b 1411193 -c B1_1X2_1_YEAR_  
→TERM -q 10
```

vs cacpacity create_options

This command will print out the Flavors that can be used to create a Reserved Capacity Group, as well as the backend routers available, as those are needed when creating a new group.

vs capacity create_guest

This command will create a virtual server (Reserved Capacity Instance) inside of your Reserved Capacity Group. This command works very similar to the *slcli vs create* command.

```
$ slcli vs capacity create-guest --capacity-id 1234 --primary-disk 25 -H ABCD -D test.
↪com -o UBUNTU_LATEST_64 --ipv6 -k test-key --test
```

vs capacity detail

This command will print out some basic information about the specified Reserved Capacity Group.

vs capacity list

This command will list out all Reserved Capacity Groups. a # symbol represents a filled instance, and a - symbol represents an empty instance

```
$ slcli vs capacity list
:.....
↪.....:
:
: Reserved Capacity
↪.....:
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....
↪.....:
: ID : Name : Capacity : Flavor : Location :
↪ Created :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....
↪.....:
: 1234 : test-capacity : ###- - - - - : B1.1x2 (1 Year Term) : bcr02a.dal13 : 2018-
↪09-24T16:33:09-06:00 :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....
↪.....:
```

6.35.28 Placement Groups

Working with Placement Groups

A [Placement Group](#) is a way to control which physical servers your virtual servers get provisioned onto.

To create a [VirtualPlacementGroup](#) object, you will need to know the following:

- backendRouterId, from [getAvailableRouters](#)
- ruleId, from [getAllObjects](#)
- name, can be any string, but must be unique on your account

Once a placement group is created, you can create new virtual servers in that group. Existing VSIs cannot be moved into a placement group. When ordering a VSI in a placement group, make sure to set the `placementGroupId` for each guest in your order.

use the `--placementgroup` option with `vs create` to specify creating a VSI in a specific group.

```
$ slcli vs create -H testGroup001 -D test.com -f B1_1X2X25 -d mex01 -o DEBIAN_LATEST --  
↪placementgroup testGroup
```

Placement groups can only be deleted once all the virtual guests in the group have been reclaimed.

vs placementgroup create

This command will create a placement group.

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup create --name testGroup -b bcr02a.dal06 -r SPREAD
```

Options

- name TEXT** Name for this new placement group. [required]
- b, --backend_router TEXT** backendRouter, can be either the hostname or id. [required]
- r, --rule TEXT** The keyName or Id of the rule to govern this placement group. [required]

vs placementgroup create-options

This command will print out the available routers and rule sets for use in creating a placement group.

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup create-options  
:.....:  
:                    Available Routers                    :  
:.....:  
: Datacenter :    Hostname    : Backend Router Id :  
:.....:  
: Washington 1 : bcr01.wdc01 :        16358        :  
:    Tokyo 5    : bcr01a.tok05 :        1587015        :  
:.....:  
:.....:  
:    Rules        :  
:.....:  
: Id : KeyName :  
:.....:  
: 1   :   SPREAD :  
:.....:
```

vs placementgroup delete

This command will remove a placement group. The placement group needs to be empty for this command to succeed.

Options

--purge Delete all guests in this placement group. The group itself can be deleted once all VMs are fully reclaimed

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup delete testGroup
```

You can use the flag `--purge` to auto-cancel all VSIs in a placement group. You will still need to wait for them to be reclaimed before proceeding to delete the group itself.

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup delete testGroup --purge
You are about to delete the following guests!
issues10691547768562.test.com, issues10691547768572.test.com, issues10691547768552.
test.com, issues10691548718280.test.com
This action will cancel all guests! Continue? [y/N]: y
Deleting issues10691547768562.test.com...
Deleting issues10691547768572.test.com...
Deleting issues10691547768552.test.com...
Deleting issues10691548718280.test.com...
```

vs placementgroup list

This command will list all placement groups on your account.

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup list
.....
↪...:
:
: Placement Groups
↪ :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪...:
: Id : Name : Backend Router : Rule : Guests : Created
↪ :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪...:
: 31741 : fotest : bcr01a.tor01 : SPREAD : 1 : 2018-11-22T14:36:10-
↪06:00 :
: 64535 : testGroup : bcr01a.mex01 : SPREAD : 3 : 2019-01-17T14:36:42-
↪06:00 :
:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:.....:
↪...:
```

vs placementgroup detail

This command will provide some detailed information about a specific placement group

```
$ slcli vs placementgroup detail testGroup
:.....:
:  Id   :      Name   : Backend Router : Rule :      Created      :
:.....:
: 64535 : testGroup  : bcr01a.mex01  : SPREAD : 2019-01-17T14:36:42-06:00 :
:.....:
↪.....:
:  Id   :      FQDN   : Primary IP   : Backend IP : CPU : Memory :
↪ Provisioned : Transaction :
:.....:
↪.....:
: 69134895 : testGroup62.test.com : 169.57.70.166 : 10.131.11.32 : 1 : 1024 : 2019-
↪ 01-17T17:44:50-06:00 : - :
: 69134901 : testGroup72.test.com : 169.57.70.184 : 10.131.11.59 : 1 : 1024 : 2019-
↪ 01-17T17:44:53-06:00 : - :
: 69134887 : testGroup52.test.com : 169.57.70.187 : 10.131.11.25 : 1 : 1024 : 2019-
↪ 01-17T17:44:43-06:00 : - :
:.....:
↪.....:
```


CONTRIBUTING

7.1 Contribution Guide

This page explains how to get started contributing code to the SoftLayer API Python Bindings project.

7.1.1 Code Organization

- **docs** - Where The source to this documentation lives.
- **SoftLayer** - All the source lives under here.
 - **API** - Primary API client.
 - **CLI** - Code for the command-line interface.
 - **managers** - API Managers. Abstractions to help use the API.

7.1.2 Setting Up A Dev Environment

Before working with the SoftLayer Python API client source, we strongly recommend that you know how to use Python's virtual environment, [virtualenv](#). Virtualenv allows you to create isolated Python environments that are individually tailored to particular development projects. Each environment can have its own set of libraries and even its own Python interpreter. This keeps them fully isolated, reducing the possibility of library conflicts between different projects.

After you have virtualenv, you should set up a virtual environment and activate it whenever you are working on softlayer-python. The commands needed to setup an environment and activate it might look something like this:

```
virtualenv --no-site-packages softlayer_env
source softlayer_env/bin/activate
```

Please refer to the virtualenv documentation for more information about creating, and working with virtual environments.

Once you have an appropriate environment, you will then download the SoftLayer API Python Bindings source code by following the [installation instructions](#). Change into softlayer-python source directory and run the following to install the pre-requisites that you'll need in order to run the test suites:

```
pip install -r tools/test-requirements.txt
```

7.1.3 Testing

The project has a mix of functional and unit tests. Before submitting changes to be integrated into the project, you should validate your code using `tox`. Simply issue the `tox` command from the root of the source tree:

```
tox
```

In addition to testing different versions of Python, `tox` checks for common mistakes in the code using `Flake8` and `pylint`. You should eliminate the linting errors that are reported before submitting your code. You can run only the linting checks by using this command:

```
tox -eanalysis
```

The project's configuration instructs `tox` to test against many different versions of Python. A `tox` test will use as many of those as it can find on your local computer.

Using `tox` to run tests in multiple environments can be very time consuming. If you wish to quickly run the tests in your own environment, you may do so using `py.test`. The command to do that is:

```
py.test tests
```

Fixtures

Testing of this project relies quite heavily on fixtures to simulate API calls. When running the unit tests, we use the `FixtureTransport` class, which instead of making actual API calls, loads data from `/fixtures/SoftLayer_Service_Name.py` and tries to find a variable that matches the method you are calling.

When adding new Fixtures you should try to sanitize the data of any account identifying results, such as account ids, username, and that sort of thing. It is ok to leave the id in place for things like datacenter ids, price ids.

To Overwrite a fixture, you can use a mock object to do so. Like either of these two methods:

```
# From tests/CLI/modules/vs_capacity_tests.py
from SoftLayer.fixtures import SoftLayer_Product_Package

def test_create_test(self):
    item_mock = self.set_mock('SoftLayer_Product_Package', 'getItems')
    item_mock.return_value = SoftLayer_Product_Package.getItems_RESERVED_CAPACITY

def test_detail_pending(self):
    capacity_mock = self.set_mock('SoftLayer_Virtual_ReservedCapacityGroup', 'getObject')
    get_object = {
        'name': 'test-capacity',
        'instances': []
    }
    capacity_mock.return_value = get_object
```

7.1.4 Documentation

The project is documented in [reStructuredText](#) and built using [Sphinx](#). If you have [fabric](#) installed, you simply need to run the following to build the docs:

```
fab make_html
```

The documentation will be built in `docs/_build/html`. If you don't have [fabric](#), use the following commands.

```
cd docs
make html
sphinx-build -b html ./ ./html
```

The primary docs are built at [Read the Docs](#).

7.1.5 Style

This project tries to follow [PEP 8](#) and most of the style suggestions that [pyflakes](#) recommends. Run [Flake8](#) regularly. [Flake8](#), with project-specific exceptions, can be run by using [tox](#):

```
tox -e analysis
```

[Autopep8](#) can fix a lot of the simple [flake8](#) errors about whitespace and indentation.

```
autopep8 -r -a -v -i --max-line-length 119
```

7.1.6 Contributing

Contributing to the Python API bindings follows the [fork-pull-request model](#) on [GitHub](#). The project uses GitHub's [issue tracker](#) and [pull requests](#) to manage source control, bug fixes and new feature development regarding the API bindings and the CLI. In order to contribute, we require that you sign a contributor agreement:

- Sign our contributor agreement (CLA) You can find the CLA [here](#).
- If you're contributing on behalf of your employer we'll need a signed copy of our corporate contributor agreement (CCLA) as well. You can find the CCLA [here](#).

7.1.7 Developer Resources

7.2 Command-Line Interface Developer Guide

The SoftLayer CLI can be used to manage many different SoftLayer services directly from the command line.

The command line parsing is currently based on [click](#), which is a command parsing library along with some additions to dynamically load modules from a routes-like file and from [entry points](#).

7.2.1 First Example

For the first example, we can create `slcli table-example` by creating the following file at `SoftLayer/CLI/table_example.py`:

```
"""A formatting table example."""
from SoftLayer.CLI import environment
from SoftLayer.CLI import formatting

import click

@click.command()
@environment.pass_env
def cli(env):
    """This returns an table that highlights how tables are output"""
    # create a table with two columns: col1, col2
    table = formatting.Table(['col1', 'col2'])

    # align the data facing each other
    # valid values are r, c, l for right, center, left
    # note, these are suggestions based on the format chosen by the user
    table.align['col1'] = 'r'
    table.align['col2'] = 'l'

    # add rows
    table.add_row(['test', 'test'])
    table.add_row(['test2', 'test2'])

    env.fout(table)
```

Then we need to register it so that `slcli table-example` will know to route to this new module. We do that by adding `ALL_ROUTES` in `SoftLayer/CLI/routes.py` to include the following:

```
...
('table-example', 'SoftLayer.CLI.table_example:cli'),
...
```

Which gives us

```
$ slcli table-example
:.....:
:  col1 : col2 :
:.....:
:  test : test  :
: test2 : test2 :
:.....:

$ slcli --format=raw table-example
test  test
test2 test2
```

Formatting of the data represented in the table is actually controlled upstream from the `CLIRunnable`'s making supporting more data formats in the future easier.

7.2.2 Arguments

A command usually isn't very useful without context or arguments of some kind. With click, you have a large array of argument and option types at your disposal. Additionally, with the SoftLayer CLI, we have global options and context which is stored in *SoftLayer.CLI.environment.Environment* and is attainable through a decorator located at *SoftLayer.CLI.environment.pass_env*. An example of options and the environment is shown below. It also shows how output should be done using *env.out* instead of printing. This is used for testing and to have a consistent way to print things onto the screen.

```
from SoftLayer.CLI import environment

import click

@click.command()
@click.option("--number",
              required=True,
              type=click.INT,
              help="print different output")
@click.option("--choice",
              type=click.Choice(['this', 'that']),
              help="print different output")
@click.option("--test", help="print different output")
@environment.pass_env
def cli(env, number, choice, test):
    """Argument parsing example"""

    if test:
        env.out("Just testing, move along...")
    else:
        env.out("This is fo'realz!")

    if choice == 'this':
        env.out("Selected this")
    elif choice == 'that':
        env.out("Selected that")

    env.out("This is a number: %d" % number)
```

Refer to the click library documentation for more options.

7.2.3 Accessing the API

A SoftLayer client is stood up for every command and is available through *SoftLayer.CLI.environment.Environment.client*. The example below shows how to make a simple API call to the *SoftLayer_Account::getObject*.

```
from SoftLayer.CLI import environment

import click

@click.command()
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
@environment.pass_env
def cli(env):
    """Using the SoftLayer API client"""

    account = env.client['Account'].getObject()
    return account['companyName']
```

7.2.4 Aborting execution

When a confirmation fails, you probably want to stop execution and give a non-zero exit code. To do that, raise a *SoftLayer.CLI.exceptions.CLIAbort* exception with the message for the user as the first parameter. This will prevent any further execution and properly return the right error code.

```
raise CLIAbort("Aborting. Failed confirmation")
```

7.2.5 Documenting Commands

All commands should be documented, luckily there is a sphinx module that makes this pretty easy.

If you were adding a summary command to *slcli account* you would find the documentation in *docs/cli/account.rst* and you would just need to add this for your command

```
.. click:: SoftLayer.CLI.account.summary:cli
   :prog: account summary
   :show-nested:
```

The following REGEX can take the route entry and turn it into a document entry.

```
s/^\(['([a-z]*):([a-z-]*)', '([a-zA-Z\.:_]*')\'),$/.. click:: $3\n    :prog: $1 $2\n    ↪:show-nested:\n/
```

Find:

```
^\(['([a-z]*):([a-z-]*)', '([a-zA-Z\.:_]*')\'),$
```

REPLACE:

```
.. click:: $3
   :prog: $1 $2
   :show-nested:
```

I tried to get sphinx-click to auto document the ENTIRE slcli, but the results were all on one page, and required a few changes to sphinx-click itself to work. This is due to the fact that most commands in SLCLI use the function name “cli”, and some hacks would have to be put in place to use the path name instead.

7.2.6 Architecture

SLCLI is the base command, and it starts at *SoftLayerCLCore.py*. Commands are loaded from the *SoftLayerCLIroutes.py* file. How Click figures this out is defined by the *CommandLoader* class in *core.py*, which is an example of a [MultiCommand](#).

There are a few examples of commands that are three levels deep, that use a bit more graceful command loader.

- *SoftLayerCLIvirtcapacity__init__.py*
- *SoftLayerCLIvirtplacementgroup__init__.py*
- *SoftLayerCLIobject_storagecredential__init__.py*

These commands are not directly listed in the routes file, because the autoloader doesn't have the ability to parse multiple commands like that. For now it was easier to make the rare third level commands have their own special loader than re-write the base command loader to be able to look deeper into the project for commands.

EXTERNAL LINKS

- [SoftLayer API Documentation](#)
- [Source on GitHub](#)
- [Issues](#)
- [Pull Requests](#)
- [PyPI](#)

PYTHON MODULE INDEX

S

- SoftLayer, [94](#)
- SoftLayer.API, [94](#)
- SoftLayer.decoration, [99](#)
- SoftLayer.exceptions, [98](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.account, [8](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.autoscale, [11](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.block, [12](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.cdn, [21](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host, [24](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.dns, [27](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.email, [30](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.event_log, [31](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.file, [32](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.firewall, [39](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.hardware, [42](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.image, [48](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.ipsec, [51](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer, [55](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.metadata, [58](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.network, [60](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.ordering, [67](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.sshkey, [73](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.ssl, [74](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.ticket, [76](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.vs, [78](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity, [88](#)
- SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement, [90](#)
- SoftLayer.utils, [99](#)

Symbols

- D
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [142](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, [142](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, [144](#)
 - event-log-get command line option, [150](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [173](#)
 - hardware-edit command line option, [175](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [177](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
 - virtual-edit command line option, [257](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [258](#)
- F
 - hardware-edit command line option, [175](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [215](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
 - virtual-edit command line option, [257](#)
- H
 - cdn-edit command line option, [137](#)
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, [135](#)
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [142](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, [142](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, [144](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [173](#)
 - hardware-edit command line option, [176](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [177](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
 - virtual-edit command line option, [257](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [258](#)
- M
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [222](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [223](#)
- P
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, [135](#)
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [200](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [201](#)
- S
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
- a-record
 - hardware-dns-sync command line option, [181](#)
 - virtual-dns-sync command line option, [257](#)
- aaaa-record
 - hardware-dns-sync command line option, [181](#)
 - virtual-dns-sync command line option, [257](#)
- ack
 - account-event-detail command line option, [112](#)
- ack-all
 - account-events command line option, [111](#)
- add
 - image-datacenter command line option, [187](#)
 - user-vpn-subnet command line option, [245](#)
- add-disk
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, [183](#)
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, [262](#)
- all
 - account-invoices command line option, [112](#)
 - virtual-capture command line option, [253](#)
 - virtual-migrate command line option, [265](#)
- all-guests
 - virtual-list command line option, [259](#)
- announcement
 - account-events command line option, [111](#)
- auth
 - config-setup command line option, [140](#)
 - setup command line option, [141](#)
- backPort
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [201](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [201](#)

202

- backProtocol
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, 200
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 201
- backend
 - loadbal-order command line option, 205
- billing
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, 125
 - block-volume-order command line option, 128
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, 142
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, 161
 - file-volume-order command line option, 163
 - hardware-create command line option, 173
 - order-place command line option, 213
 - virtual-create command line option, 254
 - vlan-create command line option, 246
- body
 - ticket-create command line option, 236
 - ticket-update command line option, 238
- boot-mode
 - virtual-create command line option, 254
- bucket-name
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, 135
- by-id
 - dns-record-edit command line option, 147
- by-record
 - dns-record-edit command line option, 147
- byol
 - image-import command line option, 185
- cache
 - cdn-edit command line option, 137
- cache-query
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, 135
- capacity
 - block-snapshot-order command line option, 123
 - file-snapshot-order command line option, 158
- category
 - order-item-list command line option, 211
- clientTimeout
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 202
- closed
 - account-invoices command line option, 112
 - ticket-list command line option, 237
- cloud-init
 - image-import command line option, 185
- columns
 - block-access-list command line option, 116
 - block-replica-locations command line option, 119
 - block-replica-partners command line option, 119
 - block-snapshot-list command line option, 122
 - block-volume-list command line option, 126
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, 142
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, 145
 - file-access-list command line option, 152
 - file-replica-locations command line option, 155
 - file-replica-partners command line option, 155
 - file-snapshot-list command line option, 158
 - file-volume-list command line option, 161
 - hardware-list command line option, 177
 - user-list command line option, 240
 - virtual-list command line option, 259
- comment
 - hardware-cancel command line option, 172
- complex-type
 - order-place command line option, 213
 - order-place-quote command line option, 217
 - order-quote command line option, 215
- components
 - hardware-detail command line option, 175
- connections
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, 201
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 202
- count
 - ticket-detail command line option, 237
- cpu
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, 141
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, 144
 - hardware-list command line option, 177
 - virtual-create command line option, 254
 - virtual-list command line option, 258
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, 262
- credential_id
 - object-storage-credential-delete command line option, 208
- credentials

```

    firewall-detail command line option, 168
--crt
    ssl-add command line option, 228
    ssl-edit command line option, 228
--csr
    ssl-add command line option, 228
    ssl-edit command line option, 228
--data
    dns-record-edit command line option, 147
    dns-record-list command line option, 148
--datacenter
    block-volume-count command line option,
        124
    block-volume-list command line option,
        126
    dedicatedhost-create command line
        option, 142
    dedicatedhost-create-options command
        line option, 143
    dedicatedhost-list command line option,
        142
    file-volume-count command line option,
        160
    file-volume-list command line option, 161
    hardware-create command line option, 173
    hardware-list command line option, 177
    ipsec-order command line option, 197
    licenses-create command line option, 198
    loadbal-order command line option, 204
    loadbal-order-options command line
        option, 205
    subnet-list command line option, 232
    virtual-create command line option, 254
    virtual-list command line option, 258
    vlan-create command line option, 246
    vlan-list command line option, 248
--date-max
    event-log-get command line option, 150
--date-min
    event-log-get command line option, 150
--day-of-week
    block-snapshot-enable command line
        option, 121
    file-snapshot-enable command line
        option, 157
--dedicated
    user-remove-access command line option,
        245
    virtual-create command line option, 254
--degraded
    hardware-edit command line option, 176
--dependent-duplicate
    block-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 125
    file-volume-duplicate command line
        option, 161
--description
    securitygroup-create command line
        option, 220
    securitygroup-edit command line option,
        220
--detail
    tags-list command line option, 234
--details
    account-invoice-detail command line
        option, 113
    order-lookup command line option, 218
--direction
    securitygroup-rule-add command line
        option, 222
    securitygroup-rule-edit command line
        option, 223
--disable
    block-snapshot-set-notification command
        line option, 132
    file-snapshot-set-notification command
        line option, 166
    hardware-toggle-ipmi command line
        option, 180
    user-edit-notifications command line
        option, 242
    user-edit-permissions command line
        option, 242
    user-vpn-manual command line option, 244
--discrete
    hardware-sensor command line option, 183
--disk
    dedicatedhost-list command line option,
        142
    virtual-create command line option, 255
--domain
    dedicatedhost-create command line
        option, 142
    dedicatedhost-list-guests command line
        option, 144
    hardware-create command line option, 173
    hardware-edit command line option, 175
    hardware-list command line option, 177
    virtual-create command line option, 254
    virtual-edit command line option, 257
    virtual-list command line option, 258
--drive-controller
    hardware-upgrade command line option, 183
--dry-run
    dns-import command line option, 145
    tags-cleanup command line option, 236
--duplicate-iops

```

- block-volume-duplicate command line option, [125](#)
- file-volume-duplicate command line option, [160](#)
- duplicate-size
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, [125](#)
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, [160](#)
- duplicate-snapshot-size
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, [125](#)
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, [160](#)
- duplicate-tier
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, [125](#)
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, [160](#)
- email
 - email-edit command line option, [150](#)
 - user-create command line option, [243](#)
- enable
 - block-snapshot-set-notification command line option, [132](#)
 - file-snapshot-set-notification command line option, [166](#)
 - hardware-toggle-ipmi command line option, [180](#)
 - user-edit-notifications command line option, [242](#)
 - user-edit-permissions command line option, [242](#)
 - user-vpn-manual command line option, [244](#)
- end
 - report-bandwidth command line option, [219](#)
- end_date
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, [171](#)
 - virtual-bandwidth command line option, [252](#)
 - virtual-usage command line option, [262](#)
- ethertype
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [222](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [223](#)
- events
 - user-detail command line option, [241](#)
- export
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [143](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [173](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
- extensions
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, [135](#)
- extra
 - hardware-create command line option, [174](#)
- extras
 - order-place command line option, [213](#)
 - order-place-quote command line option, [217](#)
- filter
 - call-api command line option, [138](#)
- firewall-type
 - firewall-add command line option, [167](#)
- flavor
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [142](#)
 - dedicatedhost-create-options command line option, [143](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, [262](#)
- fqdn
 - order-quote command line option, [215](#)
- friendly-name
 - ipsec-update command line option, [190](#)
- from-user
 - user-create command line option, [243](#)
 - user-edit-permissions command line option, [242](#)
- frontPort
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [201](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [201](#)
- frontProtocol
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [200](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [201](#)
- frontend
 - loadbal-order command line option, [204](#)
- guest
 - virtual-migrate command line option, [265](#)
- guests
 - dedicatedhost-detail command line option, [143](#)
- hard
 - hardware-reboot command line option, [178](#)
 - virtual-power-off command line option, [260](#)
 - virtual-reboot command line option, [261](#)
- hardware
 - ticket-attach command line option, [239](#)
 - ticket-create command line option, [237](#)
 - ticket-detach command line option, [240](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [240](#)
 - user-remove-access command line option, [245](#)

- virtual-list command line option, [258](#)
- hardware-id
 - block-access-authorize command line option, [116](#)
 - block-access-revoke command line option, [117](#)
 - file-access-authorize command line option, [152](#)
 - file-access-revoke command line option, [153](#)
- header
 - cdn-edit command line option, [137](#)
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, [135](#)
- healthInterval
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
- healthPath
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
- healthRetry
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
- healthTimeout
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
- high-availability
 - firewall-add command line option, [167](#)
- history
 - cdn-detail command line option, [134](#)
- host
 - virtual-migrate command line option, [265](#)
- host-id
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
- hostname
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [142](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, [144](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [173](#)
 - hardware-edit command line option, [176](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [177](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
 - virtual-edit command line option, [257](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [258](#)
- hour
 - block-snapshot-enable command line option, [121](#)
 - file-snapshot-enable command line option, [157](#)
- hourly
 - virtual-list command line option, [258](#)
- http-port
 - cdn-edit command line option, [137](#)
- https-port
 - cdn-edit command line option, [137](#)
- ibm-api-key
 - image-export command line option, [186](#)
 - image-import command line option, [185](#)
- icc
 - ssl-add command line option, [228](#)
 - ssl-edit command line option, [228](#)
- id
 - call-api command line option, [138](#)
- identifier
 - subnet-list command line option, [232](#)
- image
 - order-quote command line option, [215](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
 - virtual-reload command line option, [264](#)
- immediate
 - block-snapshot-cancel command line option, [120](#)
 - block-volume-cancel command line option, [124](#)
 - file-snapshot-cancel command line option, [156](#)
 - file-volume-cancel command line option, [159](#)
 - hardware-cancel command line option, [172](#)
 - ipsec-cancel command line option, [197](#)
 - licenses-cancel command line option, [198](#)
- in-file
 - sshkey-add command line option, [226](#)
- include
 - ipsec-detail command line option, [188](#)
- interface
 - securitygroup-interface-add command line option, [224](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, [225](#)
- interval
 - loadbal-health command line option, [199](#)
- iops
 - block-volume-order command line option, [127](#)
 - file-volume-order command line option, [162](#)
- ip-address
 - block-access-authorize command line option, [116](#)
 - block-access-revoke command line option, [117](#)
 - file-access-authorize command line option, [152](#)
 - file-access-revoke command line option, [153](#)
- ip-address-id

- block-access-authorize command line option, [116](#)
- block-access-revoke command line option, [117](#)
- file-access-authorize command line option, [152](#)
- file-access-revoke command line option, [153](#)
- ip-version
 - globalip-list command line option, [170](#)
- ipv4
 - subnet-list command line option, [232](#)
- ipv6
 - globalip-create command line option, [170](#)
 - subnet-create command line option, [230](#)
 - subnet-list command line option, [232](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [256](#)
- is-encrypted
 - image-import command line option, [186](#)
- json-filter
 - call-api command line option, [139](#)
- key
 - hardware-create command line option, [174](#)
 - hardware-reload command line option, [179](#)
 - licenses-create command line option, [198](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [215](#)
 - sshkey-add command line option, [226](#)
 - ssl-add command line option, [228](#)
 - ssl-edit command line option, [228](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
 - virtual-reload command line option, [264](#)
- key-name
 - tags-set command line option, [234](#)
- keys
 - user-detail command line option, [240](#)
- keyword
 - order-item-list command line option, [211](#)
 - order-package-list command line option, [209](#)
 - order-preset-list command line option, [212](#)
- label
 - loadbal-order command line option, [204](#)
 - sshkey-edit command line option, [226](#)
- like
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
- limit
 - account-invoices command line option, [112](#)
 - account-orders command line option, [114](#)
 - call-api command line option, [138](#)
 - event-log-get command line option, [151](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [177](#)
 - object-storage-accounts command line option, [207](#)
 - securitygroup-list command line option, [219](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [259](#)
 - vlan-list command line option, [248](#)
- location
 - block-replica-order command line option, [118](#)
 - block-volume-order command line option, [128](#)
 - file-replica-order command line option, [154](#)
 - file-volume-order command line option, [163](#)
- logins
 - user-detail command line option, [241](#)
- lvm
 - hardware-reload command line option, [179](#)
- mask
 - call-api command line option, [138](#)
- member
 - loadbal-member-add command line option, [200](#)
 - loadbal-member-del command line option, [200](#)
- memory
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, [142](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, [144](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [177](#)
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, [183](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [258](#)
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, [262](#)
- metadata
 - event-log-get command line option, [151](#)
- method
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [205](#)
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [201](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [202](#)
- minute
 - block-snapshot-enable command line option, [121](#)
 - file-snapshot-enable command line option, [157](#)
- monthly
 - virtual-list command line option, [258](#)
- name
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, [142](#)
 - image-edit command line option, [184](#)

- image-list command line option, 185
- loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, 203
- loadbal-order command line option, 204
- order-place-quote command line option, 217
- securitygroup-create command line option, 220
- securitygroup-edit command line option, 220
- tags-delete command line option, 235
- tags-details command line option, 235
- ticket-upload command line option, 238
- virtual-capture command line option, 253
- vlan-create command line option, 246
- vlan-edit command line option, 247
- vlan-list command line option, 248
- network
 - hardware-create command line option, 173
 - hardware-list command line option, 177
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, 183
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, 193
 - virtual-create command line option, 255
 - virtual-list command line option, 258
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, 262
 - vlan-create command line option, 246
- network-component
 - securitygroup-interface-add command line option, 224
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, 225
- network-identifier
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, 193
- network-space
 - subnet-list command line option, 232
- new-iops
 - block-volume-modify command line option, 127
 - file-volume-modify command line option, 162
- new-size
 - block-volume-modify command line option, 127
 - file-volume-modify command line option, 162
- new-tier
 - block-volume-modify command line option, 127
 - file-volume-modify command line option, 162
- no-hardware
 - subnet-detail command line option, 231
 - vlan-detail command line option, 247
- no-metadata
 - event-log-get command line option, 151
- no-output-python
 - call-api command line option, 139
- no-public
 - hardware-create command line option, 173
- no-trunks
 - vlan-detail command line option, 247
- no-vs
 - subnet-detail command line option, 231
 - vlan-detail command line option, 247
- note
 - block-volume-set-note command line option, 131
 - file-volume-set-note command line option, 165
 - image-edit command line option, 184
 - image-import command line option, 185
 - ipsec-translation-add command line option, 194
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, 196
 - sshkey-add command line option, 226
 - sshkey-edit command line option, 226
 - subnet-edit command line option, 231
 - subnet-edit-ip command line option, 233
 - virtual-capture command line option, 253
 - vlan-edit command line option, 247
- notes
 - block-snapshot-create command line option, 120
 - file-snapshot-create command line option, 156
 - ssl-add command line option, 228
 - ssl-edit command line option, 228
- number
 - vlan-list command line option, 248
- obj-event
 - event-log-get command line option, 150
- obj-id
 - event-log-get command line option, 150
- obj-type
 - event-log-get command line option, 151
- offset
 - call-api command line option, 138
- open
 - ticket-list command line option, 237
- optimize-for
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, 135
- order
 - block-volume-list command line option, 126
 - file-volume-list command line option, 161
- orderBy
 - call-api command line option, 139

--origin
 cdn-edit command line option, 137

--origin-snapshot-id
 block-volume-duplicate command line option, 125
 file-volume-duplicate command line option, 160

--origin-type
 cdn-origin-add command line option, 135

--os
 hardware-create command line option, 173
 virtual-create command line option, 254

--os-code
 image-import command line option, 185

--os-type
 block-replica-order command line option, 118
 block-volume-order command line option, 127

--out-file
 sshkey-print command line option, 227

--output-python
 call-api command line option, 139

--p1-auth
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--p1-crypto
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--p1-dh
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--p1-key-ttl
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--p2-auth
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--p2-crypto
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--p2-dh
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--p2-forward-secrecy
 ipsec-update command line option, 191

--p2-key-ttl
 ipsec-update command line option, 191

--package_type
 order-package-list command line option, 209

--password
 block-access-password command line option, 117
 email-edit command line option, 150
 user-create command line option, 243

--passwords
 hardware-detail command line option, 175
 virtual-detail command line option, 264

--path
 ticket-upload command line option, 238

--performance-configuration
 cdn-edit command line option, 137

--permission
 user-edit-permissions command line option, 242

--permissions
 user-detail command line option, 240

--phase1-auth
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--phase1-crypto
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--phase1-dh
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--phase1-key-ttl
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--phase2-auth
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--phase2-crypto
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--phase2-dh
 ipsec-update command line option, 190

--phase2-forward-secrecy
 ipsec-update command line option, 191

--phase2-key-ttl
 ipsec-update command line option, 191

--placementgroup
 virtual-create command line option, 256

--planned
 account-events command line option, 111

--pod
 vlan-create command line option, 246

--pool
 report-bandwidth command line option, 219

--port
 cdn-origin-add command line option, 135
 dns-record-add command line option, 146

--port-max
 securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 222
 securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 223

--port-min
 securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 222
 securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 223

--port-speed
 hardware-create command line option, 173

--portable-id
 virtual-authorize-storage command line option, 265

--postinstall
 hardware-create command line option, 173
 hardware-reload command line option, 179

- order-quote command line option, 215
- virtual-create command line option, 255
- virtual-reload command line option, 264
- preset
 - order-place command line option, 213
 - order-place-quote command line option, 217
- preshared-key
 - ipsec-update command line option, 190
- price
 - dedicatedhost-detail command line option, 143
 - hardware-detail command line option, 175
 - virtual-detail command line option, 264
- prices
 - block-volume-options command line option, 124
 - file-volume-options command line option, 165
 - hardware-create-options command line option, 172
 - order-item-list command line option, 211
 - order-preset-list command line option, 212
 - virtual-create-options command line option, 256
- priority
 - dns-record-add command line option, 146
 - ticket-create command line option, 237
- private
 - image-list command line option, 185
 - loadbal-member-add command line option, 200
 - virtual-create command line option, 255
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, 262
- private-security-group
 - virtual-create command line option, 256
- private-speed
 - hardware-edit command line option, 176
 - virtual-edit command line option, 258
- protocol
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, 135
 - dns-record-add command line option, 146
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, 203
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 222
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 223
- protocol-id
 - loadbal-l7policies command line option, 204
- ptr
 - hardware-dns-sync command line option, 181
 - virtual-dns-sync command line option, 257
- public
 - image-list command line option, 185
 - loadbal-member-add command line option, 200
 - loadbal-order command line option, 205
 - virtual-create command line option, 254
- public-bandwidth
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, 183
- public-security-group
 - virtual-create command line option, 255
- public-speed
 - hardware-edit command line option, 176
 - virtual-edit command line option, 258
- quantity
 - order-place command line option, 213
 - order-quote command line option, 215
- quite_summary
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, 171
 - virtual-bandwidth command line option, 253
- reason
 - block-snapshot-cancel command line option, 120
 - block-volume-cancel command line option, 124
 - file-snapshot-cancel command line option, 156
 - file-volume-cancel command line option, 159
 - hardware-cancel command line option, 172
 - ipsec-cancel command line option, 197
- record
 - dns-record-list command line option, 148
- redundant
 - hardware-edit command line option, 176
- remote-group
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 222
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 223
- remote-ip
 - ipsec-translation-add command line option, 194
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, 196
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 222
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 223
- remote-peer

- ipsec-update command line option, [190](#)
- remove
 - image-datacenter command line option, [187](#)
 - user-vpn-subnet command line option, [245](#)
- replicant-id
 - block-disaster-recovery-failover command line option, [132](#)
 - block-replica-failover command line option, [118](#)
 - file-disaster-recovery-failover command line option, [166](#)
 - file-replica-failover command line option, [154](#)
- required
 - order-category-list command line option, [210](#)
- resize-disk
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, [183](#)
 - virtual-upgrade command line option, [262](#)
- resource-id
 - tags-set command line option, [234](#)
- respect-headers
 - cdn-edit command line option, [137](#)
- retention-count
 - block-snapshot-enable command line option, [121](#)
 - file-snapshot-enable command line option, [157](#)
- retry
 - loadbal-health command line option, [199](#)
- root-key-crn
 - image-import command line option, [185](#)
- router
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [142](#)
- router-private
 - hardware-create command line option, [174](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
- router-public
 - hardware-create command line option, [174](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
- san
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
- schedule-type
 - block-snapshot-disable command line option, [121](#)
 - block-snapshot-enable command line option, [121](#)
 - file-snapshot-disable command line option, [157](#)
 - file-snapshot-enable command line option, [157](#)
- send-email
 - order-place-quote command line option, [217](#)
- server
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
 - report-bandwidth command line option, [219](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-add command line option, [224](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, [225](#)
- service
 - dns-record-add command line option, [146](#)
- service-offering
 - block-volume-order command line option, [128](#)
 - file-volume-order command line option, [163](#)
- size
 - block-volume-order command line option, [127](#)
 - file-volume-order command line option, [162](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [173](#)
- snapshot-id
 - block-snapshot-restore command line option, [123](#)
 - file-snapshot-restore command line option, [159](#)
- snapshot-schedule
 - block-replica-order command line option, [118](#)
 - file-replica-order command line option, [154](#)
- snapshot-size
 - block-volume-order command line option, [128](#)
 - file-volume-order command line option, [163](#)
- soft
 - hardware-reboot command line option, [178](#)
 - virtual-power-off command line option, [260](#)
 - virtual-reboot command line option, [261](#)
- sortby
 - block-access-list command line option, [116](#)
 - block-replica-locations command line option, [119](#)
 - block-replica-partners command line option, [119](#)
 - block-snapshot-list command line option, [122](#)
 - block-volume-count command line option, [124](#)

- block-volume-limits command line option, [129](#)
- block-volume-list command line option, [126](#)
- cdn-list command line option, [134](#)
- dedicatedhost-list command line option, [141](#)
- dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, [145](#)
- file-access-list command line option, [152](#)
- file-replica-locations command line option, [155](#)
- file-replica-partners command line option, [155](#)
- file-snapshot-list command line option, [158](#)
- file-volume-count command line option, [160](#)
- file-volume-limits command line option, [163](#)
- file-volume-list command line option, [161](#)
- hardware-list command line option, [177](#)
- report-bandwidth command line option, [219](#)
- securitygroup-interface-list command line option, [224](#)
- securitygroup-list command line option, [219](#)
- securitygroup-rule-list command line option, [221](#)
- sshkey-list command line option, [227](#)
- ssl-list command line option, [229](#)
- subnet-list command line option, [232](#)
- summary command line option, [218](#)
- virtual-list command line option, [259](#)
- vlan-list command line option, [248](#)
- sslCert
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [201](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [202](#)
- start
 - report-bandwidth command line option, [219](#)
- start_date
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, [171](#)
 - virtual-bandwidth command line option, [252](#)
 - virtual-usage command line option, [262](#)
- static-ip
 - ipsec-translation-add command line option, [194](#)
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, [196](#)
- status
 - ssl-list command line option, [229](#)
- sticky
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [201](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [202](#)
- storage-type
 - block-volume-list command line option, [126](#)
 - block-volume-order command line option, [127](#)
 - file-volume-list command line option, [161](#)
 - file-volume-order command line option, [162](#)
- subject-id
 - ticket-create command line option, [236](#)
- subnet
 - loadbal-order command line option, [205](#)
- subnet-id
 - block-subnets-assign command line option, [130](#)
 - block-subnets-remove command line option, [130](#)
 - file-access-authorize command line option, [152](#)
 - file-access-revoke command line option, [153](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, [193](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, [194](#)
- subnet-private
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
- subnet-public
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
- subnet-type
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, [193](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, [194](#)
 - subnet-list command line option, [232](#)
- summary_period
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, [171](#)
 - virtual-bandwidth command line option, [252](#)
 - virtual-usage command line option, [263](#)
- tag
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, [141](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, [144](#)
 - hardware-edit command line option, [175](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [177](#)
 - image-edit command line option, [184](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)

- virtual-edit command line option, 257
- virtual-list command line option, 259
- tags
 - subnet-edit command line option, 231
 - tags-set command line option, 234
 - vlan-edit command line option, 247
- target
 - globalip-assign command line option, 169
 - subnet-route command line option, 233
- target-id
 - globalip-assign command line option, 169
 - subnet-route command line option, 233
- template
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, 143
 - hardware-create command line option, 173
 - user-create command line option, 243
 - user-edit-details command line option, 243
 - virtual-create command line option, 255
- test
 - globalip-create command line option, 170
 - hardware-create command line option, 173
 - hardware-upgrade command line option, 183
 - subnet-create command line option, 230
 - virtual-create command line option, 255
- tier
 - block-replica-order command line option, 118
 - block-snapshot-order command line option, 123
 - block-volume-order command line option, 127
 - file-replica-order command line option, 154
 - file-snapshot-order command line option, 158
 - file-volume-order command line option, 163
- timeout
 - loadbal-health command line option, 199
- title
 - ticket-create command line option, 236
- transient
 - virtual-create command line option, 256
 - virtual-list command line option, 258
- translation-id
 - ipsec-translation-remove command line option, 195
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, 196
- ttl
 - dns-record-add command line option, 146
 - dns-record-edit command line option, 147
 - dns-record-list command line option, 148
 - hardware-dns-sync command line option, 181
 - virtual-dns-sync command line option, 257
- type
 - dns-record-list command line option, 148
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, 193
 - ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, 194
- unplanned
 - account-events command line option, 111
- upgrade
 - block-snapshot-order command line option, 123
 - file-snapshot-order command line option, 158
- url
 - loadbal-health command line option, 199
- userdata
 - hardware-edit command line option, 176
 - order-quote command line option, 215
 - virtual-create command line option, 255
 - virtual-edit command line option, 257
- userfile
 - hardware-edit command line option, 175
 - order-quote command line option, 215
 - virtual-create command line option, 255
 - virtual-edit command line option, 257
- username
 - block-volume-list command line option, 126
 - email-edit command line option, 150
 - file-volume-list command line option, 161
- username-storage
 - hardware-authorize-storage command line option, 182
 - virtual-authorize-storage command line option, 265
- utc-offset
 - event-log-get command line option, 151
- uuid
 - loadbal-health command line option, 199
- v4
 - subnet-list command line option, 232
- v6
 - subnet-create command line option, 230
 - subnet-list command line option, 232
- valid_type
 - virtual-usage command line option, 262
- verify
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, 142
 - loadbal-order command line option, 205
 - order-place command line option, 213

- order-quote command line option, 215
- virtual
 - report-bandwidth command line option, 219
 - ticket-attach command line option, 239
 - ticket-create command line option, 237
 - ticket-detach command line option, 240
 - user-detail command line option, 240
 - user-remove-access command line option, 245
- virtual-id
 - block-access-authorize command line option, 116
 - block-access-revoke command line option, 117
 - file-access-authorize command line option, 152
 - file-access-revoke command line option, 153
- vlan-private
 - virtual-create command line option, 255
- vlan-public
 - virtual-create command line option, 255
- vsi-type
 - virtual-create-options command line option, 256
- wait
 - hardware-create command line option, 174
 - hardware-ready command line option, 181
 - virtual-create command line option, 256
 - virtual-ready command line option, 261
- weight
 - dns-record-add command line option, 146
 - loadbal-member-add command line option, 200
- wrapped-dek
 - image-import command line option, 185
- zone
 - dns-record-add command line option, 146
- a
 - config-setup command line option, 140
 - hardware-dns-sync command line option, 181
 - setup command line option, 141
 - virtual-dns-sync command line option, 257
 - virtual-migrate command line option, 265
- b
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, 135
 - loadbal-order command line option, 205
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, 201
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 202
- c
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, 125
 - block-volume-modify command line option, 127
 - cdn-edit command line option, 137
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, 135
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, 141
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, 144
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, 160
 - file-volume-modify command line option, 162
 - hardware-list command line option, 177
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, 201
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 202
 - object-storage-credential-delete command line option, 208
 - order-item-list command line option, 211
 - virtual-create command line option, 254
 - virtual-list command line option, 258
- d
 - block-volume-count command line option, 124
 - block-volume-list command line option, 126
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, 142
 - dedicatedhost-create-options command line option, 143
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, 142
 - event-log-get command line option, 150
 - file-volume-count command line option, 160
 - file-volume-list command line option, 161
 - hardware-create command line option, 173
 - hardware-list command line option, 177
 - ipsec-order command line option, 197
 - licenses-create command line option, 198
 - loadbal-order command line option, 204
 - loadbal-order-options command line option, 205
 - securitygroup-create command line option, 220
 - securitygroup-edit command line option, 220
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, 222
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, 223
 - subnet-list command line option, 232
 - tags-cleanup command line option, 236
 - tags-list command line option, 234

- virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
- virtual-list command line option, [258](#)
- vlan-create command line option, [246](#)
- vlan-list command line option, [248](#)
- e
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, [135](#)
 - event-log-get command line option, [150](#)
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, [171](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [174](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [222](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [223](#)
 - user-create command line option, [243](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [241](#)
 - virtual-bandwidth command line option, [252](#)
 - virtual-usage command line option, [262](#)
 - vlan-edit command line option, [247](#)
- f
 - call-api command line option, [138](#)
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [142](#)
 - dedicatedhost-create-options command line option, [143](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [204](#)
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [201](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [201](#)
 - sshkey-add command line option, [226](#)
 - sshkey-print command line option, [227](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
- g
 - hardware-edit command line option, [175](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
 - virtual-edit command line option, [257](#)
 - virtual-migrate command line option, [265](#)
 - vlan-edit command line option, [247](#)
- h
 - block-access-authorize command line option, [116](#)
 - block-access-revoke command line option, [117](#)
 - file-access-authorize command line option, [152](#)
 - file-access-revoke command line option, [153](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [240](#)
 - user-remove-access command line option, [245](#)
 - virtual-migrate command line option, [265](#)
- ha
 - firewall-add command line option, [167](#)
- i
 - block-access-authorize command line option, [116](#)
 - block-access-revoke command line option, [117](#)
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, [125](#)
 - block-volume-modify command line option, [127](#)
 - event-log-get command line option, [150](#)
 - file-access-authorize command line option, [152](#)
 - file-access-revoke command line option, [153](#)
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, [160](#)
 - file-volume-modify command line option, [162](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [173](#)
 - hardware-reload command line option, [179](#)
 - ipsec-detail command line option, [188](#)
 - loadbal-health command line option, [199](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [215](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-add command line option, [224](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, [225](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
 - virtual-reload command line option, [264](#)
- k
 - hardware-create command line option, [174](#)
 - hardware-reload command line option, [179](#)
 - licenses-create command line option, [198](#)
 - order-item-list command line option, [211](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [215](#)
 - sshkey-add command line option, [226](#)
 - sshkey-edit command line option, [226](#)
 - tags-set command line option, [234](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [240](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
 - virtual-reload command line option, [264](#)
- l
 - account-orders command line option, [114](#)
 - block-replica-order command line option, [118](#)
 - event-log-get command line option, [151](#)
 - file-replica-order command line option, [154](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [177](#)
 - hardware-reload command line option, [179](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [204](#)
 - securitygroup-list command line option, [219](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [241](#)

- user-remove-access command line option, [245](#)
- virtual-list command line option, [259](#)
- vlan-list command line option, [248](#)
- m
 - dedicatedhost-list command line option, [142](#)
 - dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, [144](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [177](#)
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
 - loadbal-member-add command line option, [200](#)
 - loadbal-member-del command line option, [200](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [205](#)
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [201](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [202](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [222](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [223](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [258](#)
- n
 - block-snapshot-create command line option, [120](#)
 - block-volume-set-note command line option, [131](#)
 - file-snapshot-create command line option, [156](#)
 - file-volume-set-note command line option, [165](#)
 - hardware-list command line option, [177](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, [193](#)
 - ipsec-translation-add command line option, [194](#)
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, [196](#)
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [204](#)
 - securitygroup-create command line option, [220](#)
 - securitygroup-edit command line option, [220](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-add command line option, [224](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, [225](#)
 - subnet-edit command line option, [231](#)
 - virtual-capture command line option, [253](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
 - virtual-list command line option, [258](#)
 - vlan-edit command line option, [247](#)
 - vlan-list command line option, [248](#)
- o
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, [125](#)
 - block-volume-list command line option, [126](#)
 - cdn-edit command line option, [137](#)
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, [135](#)
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, [160](#)
 - file-volume-list command line option, [161](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [173](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [254](#)
- p
 - block-access-password command line option, [117](#)
 - block-volume-options command line option, [124](#)
 - cdn-edit command line option, [137](#)
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, [135](#)
 - file-volume-options command line option, [165](#)
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, [171](#)
 - hardware-create-options command line option, [172](#)
 - loadbal-l7policies command line option, [204](#)
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [200](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [201](#)
 - order-item-list command line option, [211](#)
 - order-preset-list command line option, [212](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [222](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [223](#)
 - user-create command line option, [243](#)
 - user-detail command line option, [240](#)
 - user-edit-permissions command line option, [242](#)
 - virtual-bandwidth command line option, [252](#)
 - virtual-create-options command line option, [256](#)
 - virtual-usage command line option, [263](#)
 - vlan-create command line option, [246](#)
- q
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, [171](#)

- virtual-bandwidth command line option, [253](#)
- r
 - cdn-edit command line option, [137](#)
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [142](#)
 - ipsec-translation-add command line option, [194](#)
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, [196](#)
 - loadbal-health command line option, [199](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [222](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [223](#)
 - tags-set command line option, [234](#)
- s
 - block-replica-order command line option, [118](#)
 - block-snapshot-restore command line option, [123](#)
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, [125](#)
 - cdn-edit command line option, [137](#)
 - file-access-authorize command line option, [152](#)
 - file-access-revoke command line option, [153](#)
 - file-replica-order command line option, [154](#)
 - file-snapshot-restore command line option, [159](#)
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, [160](#)
 - hardware-bandwidth command line option, [171](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [173](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, [193](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, [194](#)
 - ipsec-translation-add command line option, [194](#)
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, [196](#)
 - loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, [203](#)
 - loadbal-order command line option, [205](#)
 - loadbal-pool-add command line option, [201](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [202](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-add command line option, [224](#)
 - securitygroup-interface-remove command line option, [225](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-add command line option, [222](#)
 - securitygroup-rule-edit command line option, [223](#)
 - virtual-bandwidth command line option, [252](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [256](#)
 - virtual-usage command line option, [262](#)
- t
 - block-volume-duplicate command line option, [125](#)
 - block-volume-modify command line option, [127](#)
 - cdn-edit command line option, [137](#)
 - cdn-origin-add command line option, [135](#)
 - dedicatedhost-create command line option, [143](#)
 - event-log-get command line option, [151](#)
 - file-volume-duplicate command line option, [160](#)
 - file-volume-modify command line option, [162](#)
 - hardware-create command line option, [173](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-add command line option, [193](#)
 - ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, [194](#)
 - ipsec-translation-remove command line option, [195](#)
 - ipsec-translation-update command line option, [196](#)
 - loadbal-health command line option, [199](#)
 - loadbal-pool-edit command line option, [202](#)
 - subnet-edit command line option, [231](#)
 - subnet-list command line option, [232](#)
 - tags-set command line option, [234](#)
 - user-create command line option, [243](#)
 - user-edit-details command line option, [243](#)
 - virtual-create command line option, [255](#)
 - virtual-usage command line option, [262](#)
- u
 - block-volume-list command line option, [126](#)
 - file-volume-list command line option, [161](#)
 - hardware-authorize-storage command line option, [182](#)
 - hardware-edit command line option, [176](#)
 - loadbal-health command line option, [199](#)
 - order-quote command line option, [215](#)
 - user-create command line option, [243](#)
 - user-edit-permissions command line option, [242](#)
 - virtual-authorize-storage command line

option, 265
 virtual-create command line option, 255
 virtual-edit command line option, 257

-v
 block-access-authorize command line option, 116
 block-access-revoke command line option, 117
 file-access-authorize command line option, 152
 file-access-revoke command line option, 153
 user-detail command line option, 240
 user-remove-access command line option, 245

-v6
 globalip-create command line option, 170

-w
 loadbal-member-add command line option, 200

-x
 loadbal-pool-add command line option, 201
 loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 202

-z
 event-log-get command line option, 151

A

ACCESS_ID
 block-access-password command line option, 117
 block-subnets-assign command line option, 130
 block-subnets-list command line option, 130
 block-subnets-remove command line option, 130
 account-bandwidth-pools-detail command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 114
 account-cancel-item command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 113
 account-event-detail command line option
 --ack, 112
 IDENTIFIER, 112
 account-events command line option
 --ack-all, 111
 --announcement, 111
 --planned, 111
 --unplanned, 111
 account-invoice-detail command line option
 --details, 113
 IDENTIFIER, 113
 account-invoices command line option

--all, 112
 --closed, 112
 --limit, 112
 account-item-detail command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 113
 account-orders command line option
 --limit, 114
 -l, 114
 AccountManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.account), 8
 ack_event() (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager method), 8
 add_certificate() (SoftLayer.managers.ssl.SSLManager method), 75
 add_event_filter() (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager static method), 8
 add_global_ip() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 60
 add_internal_subnet() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 51
 add_key() (SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager method), 74
 add_lb_l7_pool() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 56
 add_lb_listener() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 56
 add_lb_member() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 56
 add_locations() (SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager method), 49
 add_origin() (SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager method), 21
 add_remote_subnet() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 51
 add_securitygroup_rule() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 60
 add_securitygroup_rules() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 60
 add_service_subnet() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 52
 add_standard_firewall() (SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager

- method*), 39
- `add_subnet()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* *method*), 60
- `add_vlan_firewall()` (*SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager* *method*), 40
- `ApplicationError`, 98
- `apply_configuration()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger* *method*), 52
- `assign_global_ip()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* *method*), 61
- `assign_subnets_to_acl()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* *method*), 13
- `attach_hardware()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager* *method*), 76
- `attach_portable_storage()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* *method*), 79
- `attach_securitygroup_component()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* *method*), 61
- `attach_securitygroup_components()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* *method*), 61
- `attach_virtual_server()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager* *method*), 76
- `authenticate_with_iam_token()` (*SoftLayer.API.IAMClient* *method*), 96
- `authenticate_with_passcode()` (*SoftLayer.API.IAMClient* *method*), 96
- `authenticate_with_password()` (*SoftLayer.API.BaseClient* *method*), 95
- `authenticate_with_password()` (*SoftLayer.API.IAMClient* *method*), 96
- `authorize_host_to_volume()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* *method*), 13
- `authorize_host_to_volume()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* *method*), 32
- `authorize_storage()` (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager* *method*), 42
- `authorize_storage()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* *method*), 79
- `autoscale-delete` command line option
IDENTIFIER, 115
- `autoscale-detail` command line option
IDENTIFIER, 115
- `AutoScaleManager` (class in *SoftLayer.managers.autoscale*), 11
- ## B
- `BaseClient` (class in *SoftLayer.API*), 94
- `block-access-authorize` command line option
--hardware-id, 116
--ip-address, 116
--ip-address-id, 116
--virtual-id, 116
-h, 116
-i, 116
-v, 116
VOLUME_ID, 116
- `block-access-list` command line option
--columns, 116
--sortby, 116
VOLUME_ID, 116
- `block-access-password` command line option
--password, 117
-p, 117
ACCESS_ID, 117
- `block-access-revoke` command line option
--hardware-id, 117
--ip-address, 117
--ip-address-id, 117
--virtual-id, 117
-h, 117
-i, 117
-v, 117
VOLUME_ID, 117
- `block-disaster-recovery-failover` command line option
--replicant-id, 132
VOLUME_ID, 132
- `block-duplicate-convert-status` command line option
VOLUME_ID, 133
- `block-object-storage-detail` command line option
OBJECT_ID, 133
- `block-object-storage-permission` command line option
OBJECT_ID, 134
- `block-replica-failback` command line option
VOLUME_ID, 118
- `block-replica-failover` command line option
--replicant-id, 118
VOLUME_ID, 118
- `block-replica-locations` command line option
--columns, 119
--sortby, 119
VOLUME_ID, 119

block-replica-order command line option
 --location, 118
 --os-type, 118
 --snapshot-schedule, 118
 --tier, 118
 -l, 118
 -s, 118
 VOLUME_ID, 119
 block-replica-partners command line option
 --columns, 119
 --sortby, 119
 VOLUME_ID, 119
 block-snapshot-cancel command line option
 --immediate, 120
 --reason, 120
 VOLUME_ID, 120
 block-snapshot-create command line option
 --notes, 120
 -n, 120
 VOLUME_ID, 120
 block-snapshot-delete command line option
 SNAPSHOT_ID, 121
 block-snapshot-disable command line option
 --schedule-type, 121
 VOLUME_ID, 121
 block-snapshot-enable command line option
 --day-of-week, 121
 --hour, 121
 --minute, 121
 --retention-count, 121
 --schedule-type, 121
 VOLUME_ID, 122
 block-snapshot-get-notification-status
 command line option
 VOLUME_ID, 133
 block-snapshot-list command line option
 --columns, 122
 --sortby, 122
 VOLUME_ID, 122
 block-snapshot-order command line option
 --capacity, 123
 --tier, 123
 --upgrade, 123
 VOLUME_ID, 123
 block-snapshot-restore command line option
 --snapshot-id, 123
 -s, 123
 VOLUME_ID, 123
 block-snapshot-schedule-list command line
 option
 VOLUME_ID, 122
 block-snapshot-set-notification command
 line option
 --disable, 132
 --enable, 132
 VOLUME_ID, 132
 block-subnets-assign command line option
 --subnet-id, 130
 ACCESS_ID, 130
 block-subnets-list command line option
 ACCESS_ID, 130
 block-subnets-remove command line option
 --subnet-id, 130
 ACCESS_ID, 130
 block-volume-cancel command line option
 --immediate, 124
 --reason, 124
 VOLUME_ID, 124
 block-volume-convert command line option
 VOLUME_ID, 129, 131
 block-volume-count command line option
 --datacenter, 124
 --sortby, 124
 -d, 124
 block-volume-detail command line option
 VOLUME_ID, 125
 block-volume-duplicate command line option
 --billing, 125
 --dependent-duplicate, 125
 --duplicate-iops, 125
 --duplicate-size, 125
 --duplicate-snapshot-size, 125
 --duplicate-tier, 125
 --origin-snapshot-id, 125
 -c, 125
 -i, 125
 -o, 125
 -s, 125
 -t, 125
 ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID, 126
 block-volume-limits command line option
 --sortby, 129
 block-volume-list command line option
 --columns, 126
 --datacenter, 126
 --order, 126
 --sortby, 126
 --storage-type, 126
 --username, 126
 -d, 126
 -o, 126
 -u, 126
 block-volume-modify command line option
 --new-iops, 127
 --new-size, 127
 --new-tier, 127
 -c, 127
 -i, 127

-t, 127
 VOLUME_ID, 127
 block-volume-options command line option
 --prices, 124
 -p, 124
 LOCATION, 124
 block-volume-order command line option
 --billing, 128
 --iops, 127
 --location, 128
 --os-type, 127
 --service-offering, 128
 --size, 127
 --snapshot-size, 128
 --storage-type, 127
 --tier, 127
 block-volume-refresh command line option
 SNAPSHOT_ID, 129, 131
 VOLUME_ID, 129, 131
 block-volume-set-lun-id command line option
 LUN_ID, 128
 VOLUME_ID, 128
 block-volume-set-note command line option
 --note, 131
 -n, 131
 VOLUME_ID, 131
 BlockStorageManager (class in Soft-
 Layer.managers.block), 13
 browser_access_log() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.vs.VSManager method),
 79
 build_filter() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.event_log.EventLogManager
 static method), 31
 build_filter_orderby() (in module SoftLayer.utils),
 100

C

call() (SoftLayer.API.BaseClient method), 95
 call() (SoftLayer.API.IAMClient method), 96
 call() (SoftLayer.API.Service method), 96
 call-api command line option
 --filter, 138
 --id, 138
 --json-filter, 139
 --limit, 138
 --mask, 138
 --no-output-python, 139
 --offset, 138
 --orderBy, 139
 --output-python, 139
 -f, 138
 METHOD, 139
 PARAMETERS, 139

SERVICE, 139
 cancel_block_volume() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
 method), 13
 cancel_file_volume() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
 method), 32
 cancel_firewall() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager
 method), 40
 cancel_global_ip() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager
 method), 61
 cancel_guests() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager
 method), 24
 cancel_hardware() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager
 method), 42
 cancel_host() (SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager
 method), 24
 cancel_instance() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.vs.VSManager method),
 79
 cancel_item() (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager
 method), 8
 cancel_item() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger
 method), 52
 cancel_item() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager
 method), 61
 cancel_lbaas() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager
 method), 56
 cancel_snapshot_space() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
 method), 13
 cancel_snapshot_space() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
 method), 32
 cancel_subnet() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager
 method), 61
 cancel_volume() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
 method), 14
 cancel_volume() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager
 method), 33
 CapacityManager (class in Soft-
 Layer.managers.vs_capacity), 89
 capture() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method),
 79
 cdn-detail command line option
 --history, 134

UNIQUE_ID, 134
 cdn-edit command line option
 -H, 137
 --cache, 137
 --header, 137
 --http-port, 137
 --https-port, 137
 --origin, 137
 --performance-configuration, 137
 --respect-headers, 137
 -c, 137
 -o, 137
 -p, 137
 -r, 137
 -s, 137
 -t, 137
 IDENTIFIER, 137
 cdn-list command line option
 --sortby, 134
 cdn-origin-add command line option
 -H, 135
 -P, 135
 --bucket-name, 135
 --cache-query, 135
 --extensions, 135
 --header, 135
 --optimize-for, 135
 --origin-type, 135
 --port, 135
 --protocol, 135
 -b, 135
 -c, 135
 -e, 135
 -o, 135
 -p, 135
 -t, 135
 ORIGIN, 135
 PATH, 135
 UNIQUE_ID, 135
 cdn-origin-list command line option
 UNIQUE_ID, 136
 cdn-origin-remove command line option
 ORIGIN_PATH, 136
 UNIQUE_ID, 136
 cdn-purge command line option
 PATH, 136
 UNIQUE_ID, 136
 CDNManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.cdn), 21
 change_port_speed() (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 43
 change_port_speed() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 80
 clean_dict() (in module SoftLayer.utils), 100
 clean_splitlines() (in module SoftLayer.utils), 100
 clean_string() (in module SoftLayer.utils), 100
 clean_time() (in module SoftLayer.utils), 101
 clear_route() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 61
 Client() (in module SoftLayer.API), 96
 config-setup command line option
 --auth, 140
 -a, 140
 CONTEXT_ID
 ipsec-configure command line option, 192
 ipsec-detail command line option, 188
 ipsec-subnet-add command line option, 193
 ipsec-subnet-remove command line option, 194
 ipsec-translation-add command line option, 195
 ipsec-translation-remove command line option, 195
 ipsec-translation-update command line option, 196
 ipsec-update command line option, 191
 convert_dep_dupe() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 14
 convert_dep_dupe() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 33
 convert_dupe_status() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 14
 convert_dupe_status() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 33
 create() (SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager method), 11
 create() (SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager method), 89
 create() (SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager method), 90
 create_client_from_env() (in module SoftLayer.API), 97
 create_guest() (SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager method), 89
 create_instance() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 80
 create_instances() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 81
 create_or_update_lun_id() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 14

method), 14
`create_record()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager method*), 27
`create_record_mx()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager method*), 27
`create_record_ptr()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager method*), 27
`create_record_srv()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager method*), 27
`create_remote_subnet()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method*), 52
`create_securitygroup()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method*), 62
`create_snapshot()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method*), 14
`create_snapshot()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method*), 33
`create_ticket()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method*), 77
`create_translation()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method*), 53
`create_zone()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager method*), 28

D

DATA

`dns-record-add` command line option, 147
`days_to_datetime()` (*in module SoftLayer.utils*), 101
`deauthorize_host_to_volume()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method*), 14
`deauthorize_host_to_volume()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method*), 33
`decode_stacked()` (*in module SoftLayer.utils*), 101
`dedicatedhost-cancel` command line option
IDENTIFIER, 144
`dedicatedhost-cancel-guests` command line option
IDENTIFIER, 144
`dedicatedhost-create` command line option
-D, 142
-H, 142
--billing, 142

--datacenter, 142
--domain, 142
--export, 143
--flavor, 142
--hostname, 142
--router, 142
--template, 143
--verify, 142
-d, 142
-f, 142
-r, 142
-t, 143

`dedicatedhost-create-options` command line option

--datacenter, 143
--flavor, 143
-d, 143
-f, 143

`dedicatedhost-detail` command line option

--guests, 143
--price, 143
IDENTIFIER, 144

`dedicatedhost-list` command line option

-D, 142
-H, 142
--columns, 142
--cpu, 141
--datacenter, 142
--disk, 142
--memory, 142
--name, 142
--sortby, 141
--tag, 141
-c, 141
-d, 142
-m, 142

`dedicatedhost-list-guests` command line option

-D, 144
-H, 144
--columns, 145
--cpu, 144
--domain, 144
--hostname, 144
--memory, 144
--sortby, 145
--tag, 144
-c, 144
-m, 144
IDENTIFIER, 145

`DedicatedHostManager` (*class in SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host*), 24

`del_lb_l7_pool()` (*SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager*

`method`), 56
`delete()` (*SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager* `method`), 11
`delete()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager* `method`), 91
`delete_image()` (*SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager* `method`), 49
`delete_key()` (*SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager* `method`), 74
`delete_lb_member()` (*SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager* `method`), 57
`delete_record()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* `method`), 28
`delete_remote_subnet()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger* `method`), 53
`delete_securitygroup()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* `method`), 62
`delete_snapshot()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* `method`), 15
`delete_snapshot()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* `method`), 33
`delete_zone()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* `method`), 28
`detach_hardware()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager* `method`), 77
`detach_securitygroup_component()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* `method`), 62
`detach_securitygroup_components()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* `method`), 62
`detach_virtual_server()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager* `method`), 77
`details()` (*SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager* `method`), 11
`dict_merge()` (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 101
`disable_snapshots()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* `method`), 15
`disable_snapshots()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* `method`), 34
`disaster_recovery_failover_to_replicant()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* `method`), 15
`disaster_recovery_failover_to_replicant()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* `method`), 34
`disaster_recovery_failover_to_replicant()` (import command line option `--dry-run`), 145
`ZONEFILE`, 145
`dns-record-add` command line option `--port`, 146
`--priority`, 146
`--protocol`, 146
`--service`, 146
`--ttl`, 146
`--weight`, 146
`--zone`, 146
`DATA`, 147
`RECORD`, 147
`RECORD_TYPE`, 147
`dns-record-edit` command line option `--by-id`, 147
`--by-record`, 147
`--data`, 147
`--ttl`, 147
`ZONE_ID`, 147
`dns-record-list` command line option `--data`, 148
`--record`, 148
`--ttl`, 148
`--type`, 148
`ZONE`, 148
`dns-record-remove` command line option `RECORD_ID`, 148
`dns-zone-create` command line option `ZONE`, 148
`dns-zone-delete` command line option `ZONE`, 149
`dns-zone-print` command line option `ZONE`, 149
`DNSManager` (class in *SoftLayer.managers.dns*), 27
`dst()` (*SoftLayer.utils.UTC* `method`), 100
`dump_zone()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* `method`), 28

E

`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager* `method`), 11
`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager* `method`), 22
`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager* `method`), 43
`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager* `method`), 49
`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* `method`), 62
`edit()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* `method`), 82

`edit_certificate()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ssl.SSLManager* method), 75

`edit_dedicated_fw_rules()` (*SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager* method), 40

`edit_key()` (*SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager* method), 74

`edit_note_subnet()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 62

`edit_record()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* method), 28

`edit_securitygroup()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 62

`edit_securitygroup_rule()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 63

`edit_standard_fw_rules()` (*SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager* method), 40

`edit_zone()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* method), 28

`editObject()` (*SoftLayer.managers.email.EmailManager* method), 30

email-detail command line option
IDENTIFIER, 150

email-edit command line option
--email, 150
--password, 150
--username, 150
IDENTIFIER, 150

EmailManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.email*), 30

`enable_snapshots()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 15

`enable_snapshots()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* method), 34

`end_date` (*SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager* property), 22

ENDPOINT_ID
subnet-create command line option, 230

`event_log_filter_between_date()` (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 101

`event_log_filter_greater_than_date()` (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 101

`event_log_filter_less_than_date()` (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 102

event-log-get command line option
-D, 150
--date-max, 150
--date-min, 150
--limit, 151
--metadata, 151
--no-metadata, 151
--obj-event, 150
--obj-id, 150
--obj-type, 151
--utc-offset, 151
-d, 150
-e, 150
-i, 150
-l, 151
-t, 151
-z, 151

EventManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.event_log*), 31

`export_image_to_uri()` (*SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager* method), 49

F

`failback_from_replicant()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 15

`failback_from_replicant()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* method), 34

`failover_to_replicant()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 15

`failover_to_replicant()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* method), 34

file-access-authorize command line option
--hardware-id, 152
--ip-address, 152
--ip-address-id, 152
--subnet-id, 152
--virtual-id, 152
-h, 152
-i, 152
-s, 152
-v, 152
VOLUME_ID, 152

file-access-list command line option
--columns, 152
--sortby, 152
VOLUME_ID, 153

file-access-revoke command line option
--hardware-id, 153
--ip-address, 153
--ip-address-id, 153
--subnet-id, 153
--virtual-id, 153
-h, 153

- i, 153
- s, 153
- v, 153
- VOLUME_ID, 153
- file-disaster-recovery-failover command line option
 - replicant-id, 166
 - VOLUME_ID, 166
- file-duplicate-convert-status command line option
 - VOLUME_ID, 167
- file-replica-failback command line option
 - VOLUME_ID, 153
- file-replica-failover command line option
 - replicant-id, 154
 - VOLUME_ID, 154
- file-replica-locations command line option
 - columns, 155
 - sortby, 155
 - VOLUME_ID, 155
- file-replica-order command line option
 - location, 154
 - snapshot-schedule, 154
 - tier, 154
 - l, 154
 - s, 154
 - VOLUME_ID, 154
- file-replica-partners command line option
 - columns, 155
 - sortby, 155
 - VOLUME_ID, 155
- file-snapshot-cancel command line option
 - immediate, 156
 - reason, 156
 - VOLUME_ID, 156
- file-snapshot-create command line option
 - notes, 156
 - n, 156
 - VOLUME_ID, 156
- file-snapshot-delete command line option
 - SNAPSHOT_ID, 156
- file-snapshot-disable command line option
 - schedule-type, 157
 - VOLUME_ID, 157
- file-snapshot-enable command line option
 - day-of-week, 157
 - hour, 157
 - minute, 157
 - retention-count, 157
 - schedule-type, 157
 - VOLUME_ID, 157
- file-snapshot-get-notification-status command line option
 - VOLUME_ID, 167
- file-snapshot-list command line option
 - columns, 158
 - sortby, 158
 - VOLUME_ID, 158
- file-snapshot-order command line option
 - capacity, 158
 - tier, 158
 - upgrade, 158
 - VOLUME_ID, 158
- file-snapshot-restore command line option
 - snapshot-id, 159
 - s, 159
 - VOLUME_ID, 159
- file-snapshot-schedule-list command line option
 - VOLUME_ID, 164
- file-snapshot-set-notification command line option
 - disable, 166
 - enable, 166
 - VOLUME_ID, 166
- file-volume-cancel command line option
 - immediate, 159
 - reason, 159
 - VOLUME_ID, 159
- file-volume-convert command line option
 - VOLUME_ID, 164, 165
- file-volume-count command line option
 - datacenter, 160
 - sortby, 160
 - d, 160
- file-volume-detail command line option
 - VOLUME_ID, 160
- file-volume-duplicate command line option
 - billing, 161
 - dependent-duplicate, 161
 - duplicate-iops, 160
 - duplicate-size, 160
 - duplicate-snapshot-size, 160
 - duplicate-tier, 160
 - origin-snapshot-id, 160
 - c, 160
 - i, 160
 - o, 160
 - s, 160
 - t, 160
 - ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID, 161
- file-volume-limits command line option
 - sortby, 163
- file-volume-list command line option
 - columns, 161
 - datacenter, 161
 - order, 161
 - sortby, 161

--storage-type, 161
--username, 161
-d, 161
-o, 161
-u, 161
file-volume-modify command line option
--new-iops, 162
--new-size, 162
--new-tier, 162
-c, 162
-i, 162
-t, 162
VOLUME_ID, 162
file-volume-options command line option
--prices, 165
-p, 165
LOCATION, 166
file-volume-order command line option
--billing, 163
--iops, 162
--location, 163
--service-offering, 163
--size, 162
--snapshot-size, 163
--storage-type, 162
--tier, 163
file-volume-refresh command line option
SNAPSHOT_ID, 164
VOLUME_ID, 164
file-volume-set-note command line option
--note, 165
-n, 165
VOLUME_ID, 165
FileStorageManager (class in Soft-
Layer.managers.file), 32
filter_outlet_packages() (Soft-
Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
static method), 67
find_item_in_package() (in module Soft-
Layer.managers.hardware), 48
firewall-add command line option
--firewall-type, 167
--high-availability, 167
-ha, 167
TARGET, 168
firewall-cancel command line option
IDENTIFIER, 168
firewall-detail command line option
--credentials, 168
IDENTIFIER, 168
firewall-edit command line option
IDENTIFIER, 169
firewall-monitoring command line option
IDENTIFIER, 169

FirewallManager (class in Soft-
Layer.managers.firewall), 39
format_comment() (in module SoftLayer.utils), 102
format_event_log_date() (in module Soft-
Layer.utils), 102

G

generate_order() (Soft-
Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
method), 67
generate_order_template() (Soft-
Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager
method), 68
get() (SoftLayer.managers.metadata.MetadataManager
method), 59
get_account_all_billing_orders() (Soft-
Layer.managers.account.AccountManager
method), 9
get_account_billing_items() (Soft-
Layer.managers.account.AccountManager
method), 9
get_account_overview() (Soft-
Layer.managers.email.EmailManager method),
30
get_active_account_licenses() (Soft-
Layer.managers.account.AccountManager
method), 9
get_active_virtual_licenses() (Soft-
Layer.managers.account.AccountManager
method), 9
get_adc() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager
method), 57
get_adcs() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager
method), 57
get_all_l7policies() (Soft-
Layer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager
method), 57
get_all_rules() (Soft-
Layer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager
method), 91
get_available_routers() (Soft-
Layer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager
method), 89
get_backend_router_id_from_hostname() (Soft-
Layer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager
method), 91
get_bandwidth_allocation() (Soft-
Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager
method), 43
get_bandwidth_allocation() (Soft-
Layer.managers.vs.VSManager method),
83
get_bandwidth_data() (Soft-
Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager

<i>method</i>), 44		<i>Layer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager</i>
<code>get_bandwidth_data()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i> method), 83	<code>get_create_options()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i> method), 44
<code>get_bandwidth_pool_counts()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i> method), 9	<code>get_create_options()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i> method), 83
<code>get_bandwidth_pools()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i> method), 9	<code>get_create_options()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager</i> method), 89
<code>get_billing_item()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i> method), 9	<code>get_datacenter()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> method), 63
<code>get_billing_item_from_invoice()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i> method), 9	<code>get_datacenter_by_keyname()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> method), 63
<code>get_billing_items()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.account.AccountManager</i> method), 10	<code>get_dedicated_fw_rules()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i> method), 40
<code>get_block_volume_access_list()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> method), 16	<code>get_dedicated_package()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i> method), 40
<code>get_block_volume_details()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> method), 16	<code>get_end_points()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> method), 16
<code>get_block_volume_snapshot_list()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> method), 16	<code>get_end_points()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager</i> method), 35
<code>get_buckets()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager	<i>method</i>), 16	<code>get_event()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager
<code>get_cache_key_query_rule()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.cdn.CDNManager</i> method), 22	<i>method</i>), 10
<code>get_cancel_failure_reasons()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> method), 63	<code>get_event_log_types()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.event_log.EventLogManager</i> method), 31
<code>get_cancellation_reasons()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i> method), 44	<code>get_event_logs()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.event_log.EventLogManager</i> method), 31
<code>get_cdn()</code> (SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager	<i>method</i>), 23	<code>get_event_logs_by_request_id()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> method), 63
<code>get_certificate()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.ssl.SSLManager</i> method), 75	<code>get_file_volume_access_list()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager</i> method), 35
<code>get_closed_pods()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> method), 63	<code>get_file_volume_details()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager</i> method), 35
<code>get_cloud_list()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> method), 16	<code>get_file_volume_snapshot_list()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager</i> method), 35
<code>get_components()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i> method), 44	<code>get_firewalls()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i> method), 41
<code>get_create_options()</code>	(Soft- <i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i>	<code>get_firewalls_gatewalls()</code> (Soft- <i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i>

<i>method</i>), 41		<i>method</i>), 74	
get_hard_drives()	(SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager <i>method</i>), 44	get_l7policies()	(SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager <i>method</i>), 57
get_hardware()	(SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager <i>method</i>), 44	get_lb()	(SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager <i>method</i>), 57
get_hardware_guests()	(SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager <i>method</i>), 83	get_lbaas()	(SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager <i>method</i>), 57
get_hardware_item_prices()	(SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager <i>method</i>), 44	get_lbaas_by_name()	(SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager <i>method</i>), 57
get_host()	(SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager <i>method</i>), 25	get_lbaas_uuid_id()	(SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager <i>method</i>), 57
get_image()	(SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager <i>method</i>), 49	get_list_datacenter()	(SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager <i>method</i>), 64
get_instance()	(SoftLayer.managers.email.EmailManager <i>method</i>), 30	get_local_disks()	(SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager <i>method</i>), 84
get_instance()	(SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager <i>method</i>), 41	get_location_id()	(SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager <i>method</i>), 68
get_instance()	(SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager <i>method</i>), 45	get_locations_list()	(SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager <i>method</i>), 50
get_instance()	(SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager <i>method</i>), 83	get_logs()	(SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager <i>method</i>), 12
get_invoices()	(SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager <i>method</i>), 10	get_maintenance_windows_detail()	(SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager <i>method</i>), 45
get_ip_by_address()	(SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager <i>method</i>), 63	get_nas_credentials()	(SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager <i>method</i>), 64
get_item_capacity()	(SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager <i>method</i>), 68	get_network_message_delivery_accounts()	(SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager <i>method</i>), 10
get_item_detail()	(SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager <i>method</i>), 10	get_network_message_delivery_accounts()	(SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager <i>method</i>), 16
get_item_price()	(in module SoftLayer.managers.hardware), 48	get_network_message_delivery_accounts()	(SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager <i>method</i>), 35
get_item_price_id()	(SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager <i>static method</i>), 68	get_object()	(SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager <i>method</i>), 90
get_item_prices()	(SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager <i>method</i>), 68	get_object()	(SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager <i>method</i>), 91
get_item_prices_by_location()	(SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager <i>method</i>), 68	get_only_active_packages()	(SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager <i>static method</i>), 69
get_items()	(SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager <i>method</i>), 68	get_order_container()	(SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager <i>method</i>), 69
get_key()	(SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager	get_order_detail()	(Soft-

<i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 69	<i>method), 35</i>
<code>get_origins()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager</i> method), 23	<code>get_router_options()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager</i> method), 25
<code>get_package_by_key()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 69	<code>get_routers()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager</i> method), 10
<code>get_package_by_type()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 69	<code>get_routers()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> method), 64
<code>get_package_id_by_type()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 69	<code>get_routers()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager</i> method), 91
<code>get_packages_of_type()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 69	<code>get_rule_id_from_name()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager</i> method), 91
<code>get_pods()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> method), 64	<code>get_securitygroup()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> method), 64
<code>get_policy()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager</i> method), 12	<code>get_sensors()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i> method), 45
<code>get_portable_storage()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i> method), 84	<code>get_standard_fw_rules()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i> method), 41
<code>get_preset_by_key()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 70	<code>get_standard_package()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i> method), 41
<code>get_preset_prices()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 70	<code>get_statistics()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.email.EmailManager</i> method), 30
<code>get_price_id_list()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 70	<code>get_storage_credentials()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i> method), 45
<code>get_quote_details()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 70	<code>get_storage_credentials()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i> method), 84
<code>get_quotes()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 70	<code>get_storage_details()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager</i> method), 45
<code>get_record()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager</i> method), 28	<code>get_storage_details()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.vs.VSManager</i> method), 84
<code>get_records()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager</i> method), 29	<code>get_storage_locations()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.image.ImageManager</i> method), 50
<code>get_regions()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager</i> method), 70	<code>get_subnet()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> method), 64
<code>get_replication_locations()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> method), 17	<code>get_subnet_item_price()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager</i> static method), 64
<code>get_replication_locations()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager</i> method), 35	<code>get_subnets_in_acl()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> method), 17
<code>get_replication_partners()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager</i> method), 17	<code>get_summary()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager</i> method), 10
<code>get_replication_partners()</code> (<i>Soft-</i> <i>Layer.managers.file.FileStorageManager</i> method), 17	<code>get_summary()</code> (<i>SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager</i> method), 41

<code>get_summary_data_usage()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 84	<code>get_volume_snapshot_list()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 36
<code>get_ticket()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method), 77	<code>get_volume_snapshot_notification_status()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 18
<code>get_tracking_id()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 45	<code>get_volume_snapshot_notification_status()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 36
<code>get_tracking_id()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 84	<code>get_zone()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager method), 29
<code>get_translation()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 53	<code>getBandwidthDetail()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager method), 8
<code>get_translations()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 53	<code>globalip-assign</code>	command line option
<code>get_tunnel_context()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 53	--target,	169
<code>get_tunnel_contexts()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method), 54	--target-id,	169
<code>get_upcoming_events()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager method), 11	IDENTIFIER,	170
<code>get_usage_metrics()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager method), 23	<code>globalip-cancel</code>	command line option
<code>get_virtual_guests()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager method), 12	IDENTIFIER,	170
<code>get_vlan()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 64	<code>globalip-create</code>	command line option
<code>get_volume_access_list()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 17	--ipv6,	170
<code>get_volume_access_list()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 36	--test,	170
<code>get_volume_count_limits()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 17	-v6,	170
<code>get_volume_count_limits()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 36	<code>globalip-list</code>	command line option
<code>get_volume_details()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 17	--ip-version,	170
<code>get_volume_details()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 36	<code>globalip-unassign</code>	command line option
<code>get_volume_snapshot_list()</code>	(SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 17	IDENTIFIER,	171
		GROUP_ID	
		securitygroup-edit	command line option,
		221	

H

`hardware-authorize-storage` command line option

 --username-storage,

 -u,

 IDENTIFIER,

`hardware-bandwidth` command line option

 --end_date,

 --quite_summary,

 --start_date,

 --summary_period,

 -e,

 -p,

 -q,

 -s,

 IDENTIFIER,

`hardware-billing` command line option

 IDENTIFIER,

`hardware-cancel` command line option

 --comment,

 --immediate,

```

--reason, 172
IDENTIFIER, 172
hardware-create command line option
-D, 173
-H, 173
--billing, 173
--datacenter, 173
--domain, 173
--export, 173
--extra, 174
--hostname, 173
--key, 174
--network, 173
--no-public, 173
--os, 173
--port-speed, 173
--postinstall, 173
--router-private, 174
--router-public, 174
--size, 173
--template, 173
--test, 173
--wait, 174
-d, 173
-e, 174
-i, 173
-k, 174
-o, 173
-s, 173
-t, 173
hardware-create-options command line option
--prices, 172
-p, 172
LOCATION, 173
hardware-credentials command line option
IDENTIFIER, 174
hardware-detail command line option
--components, 175
--passwords, 175
--price, 175
IDENTIFIER, 175
hardware-dns-sync command line option
--a-record, 181
--aaaa-record, 181
--ptr, 181
--ttl, 181
-a, 181
IDENTIFIER, 182
hardware-edit command line option
-D, 175
-F, 175
-H, 176
--degraded, 176
--domain, 175
--hostname, 176
--private-speed, 176
--public-speed, 176
--redundant, 176
--tag, 175
--userdata, 176
--userfile, 175
-g, 175
-u, 176
IDENTIFIER, 176
hardware-list command line option
-D, 177
-H, 177
--columns, 177
--cpu, 177
--datacenter, 177
--domain, 177
--hostname, 177
--limit, 177
--memory, 177
--network, 177
--sortby, 177
--tag, 177
-c, 177
-d, 177
-l, 177
-m, 177
-n, 177
hardware-monitoring command line option
IDENTIFIER, 174
hardware-power-cycle command line option
IDENTIFIER, 178
hardware-power-off command line option
IDENTIFIER, 178
hardware-power-on command line option
IDENTIFIER, 178
hardware-ready command line option
--wait, 181
IDENTIFIER, 181
hardware-reboot command line option
--hard, 178
--soft, 178
IDENTIFIER, 179
hardware-reflash-firmware command line
option
IDENTIFIER, 180
hardware-reload command line option
--key, 179
--lvm, 179
--postinstall, 179
-i, 179
-k, 179
-l, 179
IDENTIFIER, 179

```

hardware-rescue command line option
IDENTIFIER, 179

hardware-sensor command line option
--discrete, 183
IDENTIFIER, 184

hardware-storage command line option
IDENTIFIER, 182

hardware-toggle-ipmi command line option
--disable, 180
--enable, 180
IDENTIFIER, 180

hardware-update-firmware command line
option
IDENTIFIER, 180

hardware-upgrade command line option
--add-disk, 183
--drive-controller, 183
--memory, 183
--network, 183
--public-bandwidth, 183
--resize-disk, 183
--test, 183
IDENTIFIER, 183

HardwareManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.hardware*), 42

has_firewall() (in module *SoftLayer.managers.firewall*), 41

|

IAMClient (class in *SoftLayer.API*), 96

IALError, 98

IDENTIFIER

- account-bandwidth-pools-detail command line option, 114
- account-cancel-item command line option, 113
- account-event-detail command line option, 112
- account-invoice-detail command line option, 113
- account-item-detail command line option, 113
- autoscale-delete command line option, 115
- autoscale-detail command line option, 115
- cdn-edit command line option, 137
- dedicatedhost-cancel command line option, 144
- dedicatedhost-cancel-guests command line option, 144
- dedicatedhost-detail command line option, 144
- dedicatedhost-list-guests command line option, 145
- email-detail command line option, 150
- email-edit command line option, 150
- firewall-cancel command line option, 168
- firewall-detail command line option, 168
- firewall-edit command line option, 169
- firewall-monitoring command line option, 169
- globalip-assign command line option, 170
- globalip-cancel command line option, 170
- globalip-unassign command line option, 171
- hardware-authorize-storage command line option, 182
- hardware-bandwidth command line option, 172
- hardware-billing command line option, 175
- hardware-cancel command line option, 172
- hardware-credentials command line option, 174
- hardware-detail command line option, 175
- hardware-dns-sync command line option, 182
- hardware-edit command line option, 176
- hardware-monitoring command line option, 174
- hardware-power-cycle command line option, 178
- hardware-power-off command line option, 178
- hardware-power-on command line option, 178
- hardware-ready command line option, 181
- hardware-reboot command line option, 179
- hardware-reflash-firmware command line option, 180
- hardware-reload command line option, 179
- hardware-rescue command line option, 179
- hardware-sensor command line option, 184
- hardware-storage command line option, 182
- hardware-toggle-ipmi command line option, 180
- hardware-update-firmware command line option, 180
- hardware-upgrade command line option, 183
- image-datacenter command line option, 187
- image-delete command line option, 184
- image-detail command line option, 184
- image-edit command line option, 185
- image-export command line option, 186
- ipsec-cancel command line option, 197
- loadbal-cancel command line option, 206
- loadbal-detail command line option, 199
- loadbal-health command line option, 199
- loadbal-l7pool-add command line option, 204

- loadbal-l7pool-del command line option, 204
- loadbal-member-add command line option, 200
- loadbal-member-del command line option, 200
- loadbal-ns-detail command line option, 206
- loadbal-pool-add command line option, 201
- loadbal-pool-del command line option, 202
- loadbal-pool-edit command line option, 202
- nas-credentials command line option, 207
- object-storage-credential-create command line option, 209
- object-storage-credential-delete command line option, 208
- object-storage-credential-limit command line option, 208
- object-storage-credential-list command line option, 208
- object-storage-endpoints command line option, 207
- order-lookup command line option, 218
- securitygroup-detail command line option, 220
- sshkey-edit command line option, 227
- sshkey-print command line option, 227
- sshkey-remove command line option, 226
- ssl-download command line option, 228
- ssl-edit command line option, 229
- ssl-remove command line option, 229
- subnet-cancel command line option, 230
- subnet-clear-route command line option, 234
- subnet-detail command line option, 231
- subnet-edit command line option, 231
- subnet-edit-ip command line option, 233
- subnet-route command line option, 233
- tags-delete command line option, 235
- tags-details command line option, 235
- ticket-attach command line option, 239
- ticket-detach command line option, 240
- ticket-detail command line option, 237
- ticket-update command line option, 238
- ticket-upload command line option, 239
- user-delete command line option, 244
- user-detail command line option, 241
- user-device-access command line option, 244
- user-edit-permissions command line option, 242
- user-permissions command line option, 241
- user-remove-access command line option, 245
- virtual-access command line option, 266
- virtual-authorize-storage command line option, 265
- virtual-bandwidth command line option, 253
- virtual-billing command line option, 263
- virtual-cancel command line option, 253
- virtual-capture command line option, 254
- virtual-credentials command line option, 265
- virtual-detail command line option, 264
- virtual-dns-sync command line option, 257
- virtual-edit command line option, 258
- virtual-monitoring command line option, 266
- virtual-pause command line option, 259
- virtual-power-off command line option, 260
- virtual-power-on command line option, 260
- virtual-ready command line option, 261
- virtual-reboot command line option, 261
- virtual-reload command line option, 264
- virtual-rescue command line option, 261
- virtual-resume command line option, 260
- virtual-storage command line option, 263
- virtual-upgrade command line option, 262
- virtual-usage command line option, 263
- vlan-cancel command line option, 248
- vlan-detail command line option, 247
- vlan-edit command line option, 247
- IdentifierMixin (*class in SoftLayer.utils*), 100
- image-datacenter command line option
 - add, 187
 - remove, 187
 - IDENTIFIER, 187
 - LOCATIONS, 187
- image-delete command line option
 - IDENTIFIER, 184
- image-detail command line option
 - IDENTIFIER, 184
- image-edit command line option
 - name, 184
 - note, 184
 - tag, 184
 - IDENTIFIER, 185
- image-export command line option
 - ibm-api-key, 186
 - IDENTIFIER, 186
 - URI, 186
- image-import command line option
 - byol, 185
 - cloud-init, 185

- `--ibm-api-key`, 185
 - `--is-encrypted`, 186
 - `--note`, 185
 - `--os-code`, 185
 - `--root-key-crn`, 185
 - `--wrapped-dek`, 185
 - `NAME`, 186
 - `URI`, 186
- `image-list` command line option
 - `--name`, 185
 - `--private`, 185
 - `--public`, 185
- `ImageManager` (class in *SoftLayer.managers.image*), 49
- `import_image_from_uri()` (*SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager* method), 50
- `InternalError`, 98
- `InvalidCharacter`, 98
- `InvalidMethodParameters`, 98
- `IP_ADDRESS`
 - `subnet-lookup` command line option, 232
- `ip_lookup()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 65
- `ipsec-cancel` command line option
 - `--immediate`, 197
 - `--reason`, 197
 - `IDENTIFIER`, 197
- `ipsec-configure` command line option
 - `CONTEXT_ID`, 192
- `ipsec-detail` command line option
 - `--include`, 188
 - `-i`, 188
 - `CONTEXT_ID`, 188
- `ipsec-order` command line option
 - `--datacenter`, 197
 - `-d`, 197
- `ipsec-subnet-add` command line option
 - `--network`, 193
 - `--network-identifier`, 193
 - `--subnet-id`, 193
 - `--subnet-type`, 193
 - `--type`, 193
 - `-n`, 193
 - `-s`, 193
 - `-t`, 193
 - `CONTEXT_ID`, 193
- `ipsec-subnet-remove` command line option
 - `--subnet-id`, 194
 - `--subnet-type`, 194
 - `--type`, 194
 - `-s`, 194
 - `-t`, 194
 - `CONTEXT_ID`, 194
- `ipsec-translation-add` command line option
 - `--note`, 194
 - `--remote-ip`, 194
 - `--static-ip`, 194
 - `-n`, 194
 - `-r`, 194
 - `-s`, 194
 - `CONTEXT_ID`, 195
- `ipsec-translation-remove` command line option
 - `--translation-id`, 195
 - `-t`, 195
 - `CONTEXT_ID`, 195
- `ipsec-translation-update` command line option
 - `--note`, 196
 - `--remote-ip`, 196
 - `--static-ip`, 196
 - `--translation-id`, 196
 - `-n`, 196
 - `-r`, 196
 - `-s`, 196
 - `-t`, 196
 - `CONTEXT_ID`, 196
- `ipsec-update` command line option
 - `--friendly-name`, 190
 - `--p1-auth`, 190
 - `--p1-crypto`, 190
 - `--p1-dh`, 190
 - `--p1-key-ttl`, 190
 - `--p2-auth`, 190
 - `--p2-crypto`, 190
 - `--p2-dh`, 190
 - `--p2-forward-secrecy`, 191
 - `--p2-key-ttl`, 191
 - `--phase1-auth`, 190
 - `--phase1-crypto`, 190
 - `--phase1-dh`, 190
 - `--phase1-key-ttl`, 190
 - `--phase2-auth`, 190
 - `--phase2-crypto`, 190
 - `--phase2-dh`, 190
 - `--phase2-forward-secrecy`, 191
 - `--phase2-key-ttl`, 191
 - `--preshared-key`, 190
 - `--remote-peer`, 190
 - `CONTEXT_ID`, 191
- `IPSECManager` (class in *SoftLayer.managers.ipsec*), 51
- `is_ready()` (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 102
- `iter_call()` (*SoftLayer.API.BaseClient* method), 95
- `iter_call()` (*SoftLayer.API.Service* method), 97

K

KEY

- `licenses-cancel` command line option, 198

L

LABEL

sshkey-add command line option, 226

lbaas_order_options() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 58

licenses-cancel command line option
--immediate, 198
KEY, 198

licenses-create command line option
--datacenter, 198
--key, 198
-d, 198
-k, 198

list() (SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager method), 12

list() (SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager method), 90

list() (SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager method), 91

list_block_volume_limit() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 18

list_block_volumes() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 18

list_categories() (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 70

list_cdn() (SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager method), 23

list_certs() (SoftLayer.managers.ssl.SSLManager method), 76

list_file_volume_limit() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 36

list_file_volumes() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 36

list_global_ips() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 65

list_guests() (SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager method), 25

list_hardware() (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 45

list_instances() (SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager method), 26

list_instances() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 84

list_items() (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 70

list_keys() (SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager method), 74

list_packages() (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 71

list_presets() (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 71

list_private_images() (SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager method), 50

list_public_images() (SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager method), 50

list_securitygroup_rules() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 65

list_securitygroups() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 65

list_subjects() (SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method), 77

list_subnets() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 65

list_tickets() (SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method), 77

list_vlans() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 65

list_volume_schedules() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 18

list_volume_schedules() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 37

list_zones() (SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager method), 29

LISTENER

loadbal-pool-del command line option, 202
loadbal-pool-edit command line option,

loadbal-cancel command line option
IDENTIFIER, 206

loadbal-detail command line option
IDENTIFIER, 199

loadbal-health command line option
--interval, 199
--retry, 199

--timeout, 199
--url, 199

--uuid, 199
-i, 199

- r, 199
- t, 199
- u, 199
- IDENTIFIER, 199
- loadbal-l7policies command line option
 - protocol-id, 204
- p, 204
- loadbal-l7pool-add command line option
 - P, 203
 - S, 203
 - healthInterval, 203
 - healthPath, 203
 - healthRetry, 203
 - healthTimeout, 203
 - method, 203
 - name, 203
 - protocol, 203
 - server, 203
 - sticky, 203
 - m, 203
 - n, 203
 - s, 203
 - IDENTIFIER, 204
- loadbal-l7pool-del command line option
 - IDENTIFIER, 204
- loadbal-member-add command line option
 - member, 200
 - private, 200
 - public, 200
 - weight, 200
 - m, 200
 - w, 200
 - IDENTIFIER, 200
- loadbal-member-del command line option
 - member, 200
 - m, 200
 - IDENTIFIER, 200
- loadbal-ns-detail command line option
 - IDENTIFIER, 206
- loadbal-order command line option
 - backend, 205
 - datacenter, 204
 - frontend, 204
 - label, 204
 - method, 205
 - name, 204
 - public, 205
 - subnet, 205
 - verify, 205
 - b, 205
 - d, 204
 - f, 204
 - l, 204
 - m, 205
 - n, 204
 - s, 205
- loadbal-order-options command line option
 - datacenter, 205
 - d, 205
- loadbal-pool-add command line option
 - P, 200
 - backPort, 201
 - backProtocol, 200
 - connections, 201
 - frontPort, 201
 - frontProtocol, 200
 - method, 201
 - sslCert, 201
 - sticky, 201
 - b, 201
 - c, 201
 - f, 201
 - m, 201
 - p, 200
 - s, 201
 - x, 201
 - IDENTIFIER, 201
- loadbal-pool-del command line option
 - IDENTIFIER, 202
 - LISTENER, 202
- loadbal-pool-edit command line option
 - P, 201
 - backPort, 202
 - backProtocol, 201
 - clientTimeout, 202
 - connections, 202
 - frontPort, 201
 - frontProtocol, 201
 - method, 202
 - sslCert, 202
 - sticky, 202
 - b, 202
 - c, 202
 - f, 201
 - m, 202
 - p, 201
 - s, 202
 - t, 202
 - x, 202
 - IDENTIFIER, 202
 - LISTENER, 202
- LoadBalancerManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer*), 56
- LOCATION
 - block-volume-options command line option, 124
 - file-volume-options command line option, 166

hardware-create-options command line option, 173
 order-item-list command line option, 211
 order-place command line option, 213
 order-place-quote command line option, 217
 virtual-create-options command line option, 256

LOCATIONS

image-datacenter command line option, 187

lookup() (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 102

LUN_ID

block-volume-set-lun-id command line option, 128

M

metadata command line option

PROP, 140

METADATA_ATTRIBUTES (*SoftLayer.managers.metadata attribute*), 59

MetadataManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.metadata*), 59

METHOD

call-api command line option, 139

MethodNotFound, 98

migrate() (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method*), 85

migrate_dedicated() (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method*), 85

module

SoftLayer, 94
 SoftLayer.API, 94
 SoftLayer.decoration, 99
 SoftLayer.exceptions, 98
 SoftLayer.managers.account, 8
 SoftLayer.managers.autoscale, 11
 SoftLayer.managers.block, 12
 SoftLayer.managers.cdn, 21
 SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host, 24
 SoftLayer.managers.dns, 27
 SoftLayer.managers.email, 30
 SoftLayer.managers.event_log, 31
 SoftLayer.managers.file, 32
 SoftLayer.managers.firewall, 39
 SoftLayer.managers.hardware, 42
 SoftLayer.managers.image, 48
 SoftLayer.managers.ipsec, 51
 SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer, 55
 SoftLayer.managers.metadata, 58
 SoftLayer.managers.network, 60
 SoftLayer.managers.ordering, 67
 SoftLayer.managers.sshkey, 73
 SoftLayer.managers.ssl, 74

SoftLayer.managers.ticket, 76
 SoftLayer.managers.vs, 78
 SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity, 88
 SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement, 90
 SoftLayer.utils, 99

N

NAME

image-import command line option, 186

nas-credentials command line option

IDENTIFIER, 207

NestedDict (class in *SoftLayer.utils*), 100

NETWORK

subnet-create command line option, 230

NetworkManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.network*), 60

NOTIFICATION

user-edit-notifications command line option, 242

NotWellFormed, 98

O

OBJECT_ID

block-object-storage-detail command line option, 133

block-object-storage-permission command line option, 134

object-storage-accounts command line option --limit, 207

object-storage-credential-create command line option

IDENTIFIER, 209

object-storage-credential-delete command line option

--credential_id, 208

-c, 208

IDENTIFIER, 208

object-storage-credential-limit command line option

IDENTIFIER, 208

object-storage-credential-list command line option

IDENTIFIER, 208

object-storage-endpoints command line option

IDENTIFIER, 207

order() (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger method*), 54

order_block_volume() (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method*), 18

order_duplicate_volume() (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method*), 19

`order_duplicate_volume()` (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 37

`order_file_volume()` (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 37

`order_guest()` (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method), 85

`ORDER_ITEMS`

- order-place command line option, 213
- order-place-quote command line option, 217

`order_lbaas()` (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 58

`order_modified_volume()` (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 19

`order_modified_volume()` (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 38

`order_quote()` (SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method), 71

`order_replicant_volume()` (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 19

`order_replicant_volume()` (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 38

`order_snapshot_space()` (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), 20

`order_snapshot_space()` (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method), 38

order-category-list command line option

- required, 210
- PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 210

order-item-list command line option

- category, 211
- keyword, 211
- prices, 211
- c, 211
- k, 211
- p, 211
- LOCATION, 211
- PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 211

order-lookup command line option

- details, 218
- IDENTIFIER, 218

order-package-list command line option

- keyword, 209
- package_type, 209

order-package-locations command line option

- PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 210

order-place command line option

- billing, 213
- complex-type, 213
- extras, 213
- preset, 213
- quantity, 213
- verify, 213
- LOCATION, 213
- ORDER_ITEMS, 213
- PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 213

order-place-quote command line option

- complex-type, 217
- name, 217
- preset, 217
- send-email, 217
- LOCATION, 217
- ORDER_ITEMS, 217
- PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 217

order-preset-list command line option

- keyword, 212
- prices, 212
- p, 212
- PACKAGE_KEYNAME, 212

order-quote command line option

- F, 215
- complex-type, 215
- fqdn, 215
- image, 215
- key, 215
- postinstall, 215
- quantity, 215
- userdata, 215
- userfile, 215
- verify, 215
- i, 215
- k, 215
- u, 215
- QUOTE, 215

order-quote-detail command line option

- QUOTE, 216

order-quote-save command line option

- QUOTE, 216

OrderingManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.ordering), 67

ORIGIN

- cdn-origin-add command line option, 135

ORIGIN_PATH

- cdn-origin-remove command line option, 136

ORIGIN_VOLUME_ID

- block-volume-duplicate command line option, 126

file-volume-duplicate command line option, 161

P

PACKAGE_KEYNAME

order-category-list command line option, 210

order-item-list command line option, 211

order-package-locations command line option, 210

order-place command line option, 213

order-place-quote command line option, 217

order-preset-list command line option, 212

`package_locations()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager* method), 71

PARAMETERS

call-api command line option, 139

`ParseError`, 98

PATH

cdn-origin-add command line option, 135

cdn-purge command line option, 136

`place_order()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager* method), 26

`place_order()` (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager* method), 46

`place_order()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager* method), 71

`place_quote()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager* method), 72

`PlacementManager` (class in *SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement*), 90

`private_network()` (*SoftLayer.managers.metadata.MetadataManager* method), 59

PROP

metadata command line option, 140

`public_network()` (*SoftLayer.managers.metadata.MetadataManager* method), 59

`purge_content()` (*SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager* method), 23

Python Enhancement Proposals
PEP 8, 273

Q

QUANTITY

subnet-create command line option, 230

`query_filter()` (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 102

`query_filter_date()` (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 103

`query_filter_orderby()` (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 103

QUOTE

order-quote command line option, 215

order-quote-detail command line option, 216

order-quote-save command line option, 216

R

RECORD

dns-record-add command line option, 147

RECORD_ID

dns-record-remove command line option, 148

RECORD_TYPE

dns-record-add command line option, 147

`reflash_firmware()` (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager* method), 46

`refresh_dupe()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 20

`refresh_dupe()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* method), 38

`refresh_iam_token()` (*SoftLayer.API.IAMClient* method), 96

`reload()` (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager* method), 47

`reload_instance()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* method), 86

`RemoteSystemError`, 98

`remove_certificate()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ssl.SSLManager* method), 76

`remove_internal_subnet()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger* method), 54

`remove_lb_listener()` (*SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager* method), 58

`remove_locations()` (*SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager* method), 51

`remove_origin()` (*SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager* method), 23

`remove_remote_subnet()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManger* method), 54

`remove_securitygroup_rule()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 66

`remove_securitygroup_rules()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 66

`remove_service_subnet()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager* method), 54

`remove_subnets_from_acl()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 20

`remove_translation()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager* method), 54

`report-bandwidth` command line option

- `--end`, 219
- `--pool`, 219
- `--server`, 219
- `--sortby`, 219
- `--start`, 219
- `--virtual`, 219

`REQUEST_ID`

- `securitygroup-event-log` command line option, 225

`rescue()` (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager* method), 47

`rescue()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* method), 86

`resolve_global_ip_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 66

`resolve_ids()` (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 103

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.account.AccountManager* method), 11

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 20

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager* method), 24

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager* method), 26

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.dns.DNSManager* method), 29

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.email.EmailManager* method), 30

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* method), 38

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.firewall.FirewallManager* method), 41

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager* method), 47

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.image.ImageManager* method), 51

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager* method), 54

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager* method), 58

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.sshkey.SshKeyManager* method), 74

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager* method), 78

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager* method), 87

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity.CapacityManager* method), 90

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement.PlacementManager* method), 91

`resolve_ids()` (*SoftLayer.utils.IdentifierMixin* method), 100

`resolve_location_name()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager* method), 72

`resolve_subnet_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 66

`resolve_vlan_ids()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 66

`restore_from_snapshot()` (*SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager* method), 20

`restore_from_snapshot()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager* method), 39

`retry()` (in module *SoftLayer.decoration*), 99

`route()` (*SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager* method), 66

`RULE_ID`

- `securitygroup-rule-edit` command line option, 223
- `securitygroup-rule-remove` command line option, 223

S

`save_quote()` (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager* method), 72

`scale()` (*SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager* method), 12

`scale_to()` (*SoftLayer.managers.autoscale.AutoScaleManager* method), 12

`SECURITYGROUP_ID`

- `securitygroup-delete` command line option, 221
- `securitygroup-interface-add` command line option, 224
- `securitygroup-interface-list` command line option, 224
- `securitygroup-interface-remove` command line option, 225
- `securitygroup-rule-add` command line option, 222

```

securitygroup-rule-edit command line
    option, 223
securitygroup-rule-list command line
    option, 221
securitygroup-rule-remove command line
    option, 223
securitygroup-create command line option
    --description, 220
    --name, 220
    -d, 220
    -n, 220
securitygroup-delete command line option
    SECURITYGROUP_ID, 221
securitygroup-detail command line option
    IDENTIFIER, 220
securitygroup-edit command line option
    --description, 220
    --name, 220
    -d, 220
    -n, 220
    GROUP_ID, 221
securitygroup-event-log command line option
    REQUEST_ID, 225
securitygroup-interface-add command line
    option
    --interface, 224
    --network-component, 224
    --server, 224
    -i, 224
    -n, 224
    -s, 224
    SECURITYGROUP_ID, 224
securitygroup-interface-list command line
    option
    --sortby, 224
    SECURITYGROUP_ID, 224
securitygroup-interface-remove command line
    option
    --interface, 225
    --network-component, 225
    --server, 225
    -i, 225
    -n, 225
    -s, 225
    SECURITYGROUP_ID, 225
securitygroup-list command line option
    --limit, 219
    --sortby, 219
    -l, 219
securitygroup-rule-add command line option
    -M, 222
    --direction, 222
    --ethertype, 222
    --port-max, 222
    --port-min, 222
    --protocol, 222
    --remote-group, 222
    --remote-ip, 222
    -d, 222
    -e, 222
    -m, 222
    -p, 222
    -r, 222
    -s, 222
    SECURITYGROUP_ID, 222
securitygroup-rule-edit command line option
    -M, 223
    --direction, 223
    --ethertype, 223
    --port-max, 223
    --port-min, 223
    --protocol, 223
    --remote-group, 223
    --remote-ip, 223
    -d, 223
    -e, 223
    -m, 223
    -p, 223
    -r, 223
    -s, 223
    RULE_ID, 223
    SECURITYGROUP_ID, 223
securitygroup-rule-list command line option
    --sortby, 221
    SECURITYGROUP_ID, 221
securitygroup-rule-remove command line
    option
    RULE_ID, 223
    SECURITYGROUP_ID, 223
ServerError, 98
SERVICE
    call-api command line option, 139
Service (class in SoftLayer.API), 96
set_credential_password() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager
    method), 21
set_subnet_ipaddress_note() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager
    method), 66
set_tags() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager
    method), 66
set_tags() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager
    method), 87
set_tags_subnet() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager
    method), 66
set_volume_snapshot_notification() (Soft-
    Layer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager

```

- method*), 21
- `set_volume_snapshot_notification()` (*SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager method*), 39
- setup command line option
 - `--auth`, 141
 - `-a`, 141
- SNAPSHOT_ID
 - block-snapshot-delete command line option, 121
 - block-volume-refresh command line option, 129, 131
 - file-snapshot-delete command line option, 156
 - file-volume-refresh command line option, 164
- SoftLayer
 - module, 94
- SoftLayer.API
 - module, 94
- SoftLayer.decoration
 - module, 99
- SoftLayer.exceptions
 - module, 98
- SoftLayer.managers.account
 - module, 8
- SoftLayer.managers.autoscale
 - module, 11
- SoftLayer.managers.block
 - module, 12
- SoftLayer.managers.cdn
 - module, 21
- SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host
 - module, 24
- SoftLayer.managers.dns
 - module, 27
- SoftLayer.managers.email
 - module, 30
- SoftLayer.managers.event_log
 - module, 31
- SoftLayer.managers.file
 - module, 32
- SoftLayer.managers.firewall
 - module, 39
- SoftLayer.managers.hardware
 - module, 42
- SoftLayer.managers.image
 - module, 48
- SoftLayer.managers.ipsec
 - module, 51
- SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer
 - module, 55
- SoftLayer.managers.metadata
 - module, 58
- SoftLayer.managers.network
 - module, 60
- SoftLayer.managers.ordering
 - module, 67
- SoftLayer.managers.sshkey
 - module, 73
- SoftLayer.managers.ssl
 - module, 74
- SoftLayer.managers.ticket
 - module, 76
- SoftLayer.managers.vs
 - module, 78
- SoftLayer.managers.vs_capacity
 - module, 88
- SoftLayer.managers.vs_placement
 - module, 90
- SoftLayer.utils
 - module, 99
- SoftLayerAPIError, 99
- SoftLayerError, 99
- SpecViolation, 99
- sshkey-add command line option
 - `--in-file`, 226
 - `--key`, 226
 - `--note`, 226
 - `-f`, 226
 - `-k`, 226
 - LABEL, 226
- sshkey-edit command line option
 - `--label`, 226
 - `--note`, 226
 - `-k`, 226
 - IDENTIFIER, 227
- sshkey-list command line option
 - `--sortby`, 227
- sshkey-print command line option
 - `--out-file`, 227
 - `-f`, 227
 - IDENTIFIER, 227
- sshkey-remove command line option
 - IDENTIFIER, 226
- SshKeyManager (*class in SoftLayer.managers.sshkey*), 73
- ssl-add command line option
 - `--crt`, 228
 - `--csr`, 228
 - `--icc`, 228
 - `--key`, 228
 - `--notes`, 228
- ssl-download command line option
 - IDENTIFIER, 228
- ssl-edit command line option
 - `--crt`, 228
 - `--csr`, 228

--icc, 228
 --key, 228
 --notes, 228
 IDENTIFIER, 229
 ssl-list command line option
 --sortby, 229
 --status, 229
 ssl-remove command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 229
 SSLManager (class in SoftLayer.managers.ssl), 75
 start_data (SoftLayer.managers.cdn.CDNManager
 property), 24
 SUBNET
 user-vpn-subnet command line option, 245
 subnet-cancel command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 230
 subnet-clear-route command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 234
 subnet-create command line option
 --ipv6, 230
 --test, 230
 --v6, 230
 ENDPOINT_ID, 230
 NETWORK, 230
 QUANTITY, 230
 subnet-detail command line option
 --no-hardware, 231
 --no-vs, 231
 IDENTIFIER, 231
 subnet-edit command line option
 --note, 231
 --tags, 231
 -n, 231
 -t, 231
 IDENTIFIER, 231
 subnet-edit-ip command line option
 --note, 233
 IDENTIFIER, 233
 subnet-list command line option
 --datacenter, 232
 --identifier, 232
 --ipv4, 232
 --ipv6, 232
 --network-space, 232
 --sortby, 232
 --subnet-type, 232
 --v4, 232
 --v6, 232
 -d, 232
 -t, 232
 subnet-lookup command line option
 IP_ADDRESS, 232
 subnet-route command line option
 --target, 233

--target-id, 233
 IDENTIFIER, 233
 summary command line option
 --sortby, 218
 summary_by_datacenter() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.network.NetworkManager
 method), 67
 sync_host_record() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.dns.DNSManager
 method), 29
 sync_ptr_record() (Soft-
 Layer.managers.dns.DNSManager
 method), 30

T

tags-cleanup command line option
 --dry-run, 236
 -d, 236
 tags-delete command line option
 --name, 235
 IDENTIFIER, 235
 tags-details command line option
 --name, 235
 IDENTIFIER, 235
 tags-list command line option
 --detail, 234
 -d, 234
 tags-set command line option
 --key-name, 234
 --resource-id, 234
 --tags, 234
 -k, 234
 -r, 234
 -t, 234
 TARGET
 firewall-add command line option, 168
 ticket-attach command line option
 --hardware, 239
 --virtual, 239
 IDENTIFIER, 239
 ticket-create command line option
 --body, 236
 --hardware, 237
 --priority, 237
 --subject-id, 236
 --title, 236
 --virtual, 237
 ticket-detach command line option
 --hardware, 240
 --virtual, 240
 IDENTIFIER, 240
 ticket-detail command line option
 --count, 237
 IDENTIFIER, 237

ticket-list command line option

--closed, 237

--open, 237

ticket-update command line option

--body, 238

IDENTIFIER, 238

ticket-upload command line option

--name, 238

--path, 238

IDENTIFIER, 239

TicketManager (class in *SoftLayer.managers.ticket*), 76

timestamp() (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 103

to_dict() (*SoftLayer.utils.NestedDict* method), 100

TransportError, 99

trim_to() (in module *SoftLayer.utils*), 103

tzname() (*SoftLayer.utils.UTC* method), 100

U

unassign_global_ip() (SoftLayer.managers.network.NetworkManager method), 67

Unauthenticated, 99

UNIQUE_ID

cdn-detail command line option, 134

cdn-origin-add command line option, 135

cdn-origin-list command line option, 136

cdn-origin-remove command line option,
136

cdn-purge command line option, 136

UnsupportedEncoding, 99

update_email() (SoftLayer.managers.email.EmailManager method),
31

update_firmware() (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 47

update_lb_health_monitors() (SoftLayer.managers.load_balancer.LoadBalancerManager method), 58

update_ticket() (SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method),
78

update_translation() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager method), 55

update_tunnel_context() (SoftLayer.managers.ipsec.IPSECManager method), 55

upgrade() (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), 47

upgrade() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method),
87

upload_attachment() (SoftLayer.managers.ticket.TicketManager method),

78

URI

image-export command line option, 186

image-import command line option, 186

USER

user-edit-details command line option,
243

user-vpn-manual command line option, 244

user-vpn-subnet command line option, 245

user-create command line option

--email, 243

--from-user, 243

--password, 243

--template, 243

-e, 243

-p, 243

-t, 243

-u, 243

USERNAME, 243

user-delete command line option

IDENTIFIER, 244

user-detail command line option

--events, 241

--hardware, 240

--keys, 240

--logins, 241

--permissions, 240

--virtual, 240

-e, 241

-h, 240

-k, 240

-l, 241

-p, 240

-v, 240

IDENTIFIER, 241

user-device-access command line option

IDENTIFIER, 244

user-edit-details command line option

--template, 243

-t, 243

USER, 243

user-edit-notifications command line option

--disable, 242

--enable, 242

NOTIFICATION, 242

user-edit-permissions command line option

--disable, 242

--enable, 242

--from-user, 242

--permission, 242

-p, 242

-u, 242

IDENTIFIER, 242

user-list command line option

--columns, 240
 user-permissions command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 241
 user-remove-access command line option
 --dedicated, 245
 --hardware, 245
 --virtual, 245
 -h, 245
 -l, 245
 -v, 245
 IDENTIFIER, 245
 user-vpn-manual command line option
 --disable, 244
 --enable, 244
 USER, 244
 user-vpn-subnet command line option
 --add, 245
 --remove, 245
 SUBNET, 245
 USER, 245
 USERNAME
 user-create command line option, 243
 UTC (*class in SoftLayer.utils*), 100
 utcoffset() (*SoftLayer.utils.UTC method*), 100

V

verify_create_instance() (*SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManager method*), 87
 verify_order() (*SoftLayer.managers.dedicated_host.DedicatedHostManager method*), 27
 verify_order() (*SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method*), 48
 verify_order() (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method*), 73
 verify_quote() (*SoftLayer.managers.ordering.OrderingManager method*), 73
 virtual-access command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 266
 virtual-authorize-storage command line option
 --portable-id, 265
 --username-storage, 265
 -u, 265
 IDENTIFIER, 265
 virtual-bandwidth command line option
 --end_date, 252
 --quite_summary, 253
 --start_date, 252
 --summary_period, 252
 -e, 252
 -p, 252
 -q, 253
 -s, 252
 IDENTIFIER, 253
 virtual-billing command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 263
 virtual-cancel command line option
 IDENTIFIER, 253
 virtual-capture command line option
 --all, 253
 --name, 253
 --note, 253
 -n, 253
 IDENTIFIER, 254
 virtual-create command line option
 -D, 254
 -F, 255
 -H, 254
 -S, 255
 --billing, 254
 --boot-mode, 254
 --cpu, 254
 --datacenter, 254
 --dedicated, 254
 --disk, 255
 --domain, 254
 --export, 255
 --flavor, 254
 --host-id, 254
 --hostname, 254
 --image, 254
 --ipv6, 256
 --key, 255
 --like, 255
 --memory, 254
 --network, 255
 --os, 254
 --placementgroup, 256
 --postinstall, 255
 --private, 255
 --private-security-group, 256
 --public, 254
 --public-security-group, 255
 --router-private, 255
 --router-public, 255
 --san, 254
 --subnet-private, 255
 --subnet-public, 255
 --tag, 255
 --template, 255
 --test, 255
 --transient, 256
 --userdata, 255

--userfile, 255
--vlan-private, 255
--vlan-public, 255
--wait, 256
-c, 254
-d, 254
-f, 254
-g, 255
-i, 255
-k, 255
-m, 254
-n, 255
-o, 254
-s, 256
-t, 255
-u, 255
virtual-create-options command line option
--prices, 256
--vsi-type, 256
-p, 256
LOCATION, 256
virtual-credentials command line option
IDENTIFIER, 265
virtual-detail command line option
--passwords, 264
--price, 264
IDENTIFIER, 264
virtual-dns-sync command line option
--a-record, 257
--aaaa-record, 257
--ptr, 257
--ttl, 257
-a, 257
IDENTIFIER, 257
virtual-edit command line option
-D, 257
-F, 257
-H, 257
--domain, 257
--hostname, 257
--private-speed, 258
--public-speed, 258
--tag, 257
--userdata, 257
--userfile, 257
-g, 257
-u, 257
IDENTIFIER, 258
virtual-list command line option
-D, 258
-H, 258
--all-guests, 259
--columns, 259
--cpu, 258
--datacenter, 258
--domain, 258
--hardware, 258
--hostname, 258
--hourly, 258
--limit, 259
--memory, 258
--monthly, 258
--network, 258
--sortby, 259
--tag, 259
--transient, 258
-c, 258
-d, 258
-l, 259
-m, 258
-n, 258
virtual-migrate command line option
--all, 265
--guest, 265
--host, 265
-a, 265
-g, 265
-h, 265
virtual-monitoring command line option
IDENTIFIER, 266
virtual-pause command line option
IDENTIFIER, 259
virtual-power-off command line option
--hard, 260
--soft, 260
IDENTIFIER, 260
virtual-power-on command line option
IDENTIFIER, 260
virtual-ready command line option
--wait, 261
IDENTIFIER, 261
virtual-reboot command line option
--hard, 261
--soft, 261
IDENTIFIER, 261
virtual-reload command line option
--image, 264
--key, 264
--postinstall, 264
-i, 264
-k, 264
IDENTIFIER, 264
virtual-rescue command line option
IDENTIFIER, 261
virtual-resume command line option
IDENTIFIER, 260
virtual-storage command line option
IDENTIFIER, 263

virtual-upgrade command line option

- add-disk, 262
- cpu, 262
- flavor, 262
- memory, 262
- network, 262
- private, 262
- resize-disk, 262
- IDENTIFIER, 262

virtual-usage command line option

- end_date, 262
- start_date, 262
- summary_period, 263
- valid_type, 262
- e, 262
- p, 263
- s, 262
- t, 262
- IDENTIFIER, 263

vlan-cancel command line option

- IDENTIFIER, 248

vlan-create command line option

- billing, 246
- datacenter, 246
- name, 246
- network, 246
- pod, 246
- d, 246
- p, 246

vlan-detail command line option

- no-hardware, 247
- no-trunks, 247
- no-vs, 247
- IDENTIFIER, 247

vlan-edit command line option

- name, 247
- note, 247
- tags, 247
- e, 247
- g, 247
- n, 247
- IDENTIFIER, 247

vlan-list command line option

- datacenter, 248
- limit, 248
- name, 248
- number, 248
- sortby, 248
- d, 248
- l, 248
- n, 248

VOLUME_ID

- block-access-authorize command line option, 116
- block-access-list command line option, 116
- block-access-revoke command line option, 117
- block-disaster-recovery-failover command line option, 132
- block-duplicate-convert-status command line option, 133
- block-replica-failback command line option, 118
- block-replica-failover command line option, 118
- block-replica-locations command line option, 119
- block-replica-order command line option, 119
- block-replica-partners command line option, 119
- block-snapshot-cancel command line option, 120
- block-snapshot-create command line option, 120
- block-snapshot-disable command line option, 121
- block-snapshot-enable command line option, 122
- block-snapshot-get-notification-status command line option, 133
- block-snapshot-list command line option, 122
- block-snapshot-order command line option, 123
- block-snapshot-restore command line option, 123
- block-snapshot-schedule-list command line option, 122
- block-snapshot-set-notification command line option, 132
- block-volume-cancel command line option, 124
- block-volume-convert command line option, 129, 131
- block-volume-detail command line option, 125
- block-volume-modify command line option, 127
- block-volume-refresh command line option, 129, 131
- block-volume-set-lun-id command line option, 128
- block-volume-set-note command line option, 131
- file-access-authorize command line option, 152

file-access-list command line option, [153](#)
file-access-revoke command line option, [153](#)
file-disaster-recovery-failover command line option, [166](#)
file-duplicate-convert-status command line option, [167](#)
file-replica-failback command line option, [153](#)
file-replica-failover command line option, [154](#)
file-replica-locations command line option, [155](#)
file-replica-order command line option, [154](#)
file-replica-partners command line option, [155](#)
file-snapshot-cancel command line option, [156](#)
file-snapshot-create command line option, [156](#)
file-snapshot-disable command line option, [157](#)
file-snapshot-enable command line option, [157](#)
file-snapshot-get-notification-status command line option, [167](#)
file-snapshot-list command line option, [158](#)
file-snapshot-order command line option, [158](#)
file-snapshot-restore command line option, [159](#)
file-snapshot-schedule-list command line option, [164](#)
file-snapshot-set-notification command line option, [166](#)
file-volume-cancel command line option, [159](#)
file-volume-convert command line option, [164](#), [165](#)
file-volume-detail command line option, [160](#)
file-volume-modify command line option, [162](#)
file-volume-refresh command line option, [164](#)
file-volume-set-note command line option, [165](#)
volume_set_note() (SoftLayer.managers.block.BlockStorageManager method), [21](#)
volume_set_note() (SoftLayer.managers.file.FileStorageManager

method), [39](#)

VSManger (class in SoftLayer.managers.vs), [78](#)

W

wait_for_ready() (SoftLayer.managers.hardware.HardwareManager method), [48](#)

wait_for_ready() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManger method), [88](#)

wait_for_transaction() (SoftLayer.managers.vs.VSManger method), [88](#)

Z

ZONE

dns-record-list command line option, [148](#)

dns-zone-create command line option, [148](#)

dns-zone-delete command line option, [149](#)

dns-zone-print command line option, [149](#)

ZONE_ID

dns-record-edit command line option, [147](#)

ZONEFILE

dns-import command line option, [145](#)